

Oracle® Retail Invoice Matching

Installation Guide

Release 15.0.1

E76325-01

June 2016

Copyright © 2016, Oracle. All rights reserved.

Primary Author: Sahithya Sreenath

Contributors: Nathan Young

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

Value-Added Reseller (VAR) Language

Oracle Retail VAR Applications

The following restrictions and provisions only apply to the programs referred to in this section and licensed to you. You acknowledge that the programs may contain third party software (VAR applications) licensed to Oracle. Depending upon your product and its version number, the VAR applications may include:

- (i) the **MicroStrategy** Components developed and licensed by MicroStrategy Services Corporation (MicroStrategy) of McLean, Virginia to Oracle and imbedded in the MicroStrategy for Oracle Retail Data Warehouse and MicroStrategy for Oracle Retail Planning & Optimization applications.
- (ii) the **Wavelink** component developed and licensed by Wavelink Corporation (Wavelink) of Kirkland, Washington, to Oracle and imbedded in Oracle Retail Mobile Store Inventory Management.
- (iii) the software component known as **Access Via**™ licensed by Access Via of Seattle, Washington, and imbedded in Oracle Retail Signs and Oracle Retail Labels and Tags.
- (iv) the software component known as **Adobe Flex**™ licensed by Adobe Systems Incorporated of San Jose, California, and imbedded in Oracle Retail Promotion Planning & Optimization application.

You acknowledge and confirm that Oracle grants you use of only the object code of the VAR Applications. Oracle will not deliver source code to the VAR Applications to you. Notwithstanding any other term or condition of the agreement and this ordering document, you shall not cause or permit alteration of any VAR Applications. For purposes of this section, "alteration" refers to all alterations, translations, upgrades, enhancements, customizations or modifications of all or any portion of the VAR Applications including all reconfigurations, reassembly or reverse assembly, re-engineering or reverse engineering and recompilations or reverse compilations of the VAR Applications or any derivatives of the VAR Applications. You acknowledge that it shall be a breach of the agreement to utilize the relationship, and/or confidential information of the VAR Applications for purposes of competitive discovery.

The VAR Applications contain trade secrets of Oracle and Oracle's licensors and Customer shall not attempt, cause, or permit the alteration, decompilation, reverse engineering, disassembly or other reduction of the VAR Applications to a human perceivable form. Oracle reserves the right to replace, with functional equivalent software, any of the VAR Applications in future releases of the applicable program.

Contents

Send Us Your Comments	xi
Preface	xiii
Audience	xiii
Related Documents	xiii
Customer Support	xiii
Review Patch Documentation	xiii
Improved Process for Oracle Retail Documentation Corrections	xiv
Oracle Retail Documentation on the Oracle Technology Network	xiv
Conventions	xiv
1 Preinstallation Tasks	1
Check Supported Database Server Requirements	1
Check Supported Application Server Requirements	2
Verify Single Sign-On	3
Check Supported Client PC and Web Browser Requirements	4
Supported Oracle Retail Products	4
UNIX User Account Privileges to Install the Software	4
Supported Oracle Applications	5
2 RAC and Clustering	7
3 Database Installation Tasks	9
4 Application Installation Tasks	11
Middleware Infrastructure and WebLogic Server 12c (12.1.3) Installation	11
Install RCU Database Schemas	17
Create a New ADF Domain (with managed server and EM)	24
Start the Node Manager	35
Start the AdminServer (admin console)	35
Start the Managed Server	36
Configuration of OID Provider in WebLogic Domain	36
Configure Oracle Single Sign-On	42
Create the SSO provider in the REIMDomain	42
Create mds-CustomPortalDS Datasource using EM	43
Deployment of jax-rs-2.0 library in WebLogic	49
Steps to Configure WebLogic Work Manager	55
Load LDIF Files in LDAP	63
Oracle Retail Application Administration Console	65
Clustered Installations – Preinstallation Steps	66
(Optional) Analyze Changes in the Patch	67
Expand the ReIM Application Distribution	67
Run the Oracle Retail Invoice Matching Installer	67
Resolving Errors Encountered During Application Installation	68

Post-Installation Steps	68
Clustered Installations – Post-Installation Steps.....	69
Installing the REIM BI Publisher Templates	69
Test the ReIM Application.....	69
reim.properties	70
integration.properties	70
ReIM Batch Scripts	71
Online Help.....	71
Single Sign-On.....	72
Adding Logout URI	73
5 Configuring BIPublisher for REIM.....	75
Configuring the RMS JDBC connection.....	82
6 Configure the Oracle BI EE Environment for Operational Insights.....	85
Terms	85
Install Oracle BI	85
Configure OID Provider in Oracle BI EE WebLogic Domain	85
Load LDIF Files in LDAP.....	90
Configure Oracle Single Sign-On.....	91
Create the SSO provider in the Oracle BI EE Domain	91
Configure the Repository (rpd).....	91
Set up the Database Connection	92
Configure Catalog.....	96
Configure Oracle Retail Operational Insights Roles and Application Roles	97
Language Selection with SSO.....	106
7 Post Installation Tasks and Configuration.....	107
Enable the Oracle BI EE Content to be Displayed in IFrame	107
Configure Charts /Charts/to use HTML5	107
Enable EVALUATE Function in Oracle BI EE	107
Disable Cache in Oracle BI EE.....	108
Deploy Operational Insights Skin and Styles.....	109
Create Symbolic Link to analyticsRes Directory.....	111
Prepare the Operational Insights Environment for Oracle BI EE Presentation Services Connection	112
Enable the ADF Contextual Event Action in Oracle BI EE.....	112
Single Sign-On Configuration for Oracle BI EE	112
Make the Oracle BI EE Static Resources Available to the Oracle Web Tier	112
Configure Alias for the Static Resources in the Oracle Web Tier	116
Undo the Redirect of analyticsRes to the WebLogic Server.....	116
Make the Static Resources Publicly Available	117
Enable Caching and Compression of the Oracle BI EE Static Resources	117
Verify the Static Resources using the Oracle Web Tier.....	119
Configure for In-Context launches of RMS forms.....	120

Restart Oracle BI EE	121
Validation	121
Troubleshooting	121
Refresh User GUIDs	121
8 Data Migration	123
Usage	123
Parameters	123
Error and Restart	123
Locking	124
9 Patching Procedures	125
Oracle Retail Patching Process	125
Supported Products and Technologies	125
Patch Concepts	126
Patching Utility Overview	127
Changes with 15.0	127
Patching Considerations	127
Patch Types	127
Incremental Patch Structure	128
Version Tracking	128
Apply all Patches with Installer or ORPatch	128
Environment Configuration	129
Retained Installation Files	129
Reloading Content	129
Java Hotfixes and Cumulative Patches	129
Backups	130
Disk Space	130
Patching Operations	131
Running ORPatch	131
Merging Patches	141
Compiling Application Components	142
Deploying Application Components	144
Maintenance Considerations	145
Database Password Changes	145
WebLogic Password Changes	146
Infrastructure Directory Changes	147
DBManifest Table	147
RETAIL_HOME relationship to Database and Application Server	147
Jar Signing Configuration Maintenance	147
Customization	149
Patching Considerations with Customized Files and Objects	149
Registering Customized Files	150
Custom Compiled Java Code	152

Extending Oracle Retail Patch Assistant with Custom Hooks	154
Troubleshooting Patching.....	159
ORPatch Log Files.....	159
Restarting ORPatch.....	159
Manual DBManifest Updates.....	159
Manual Restart State File Updates	161
DISPLAY Settings When Compiling Forms.....	161
JAVA_HOME Setting	161
Patching Prior to First Install.....	161
Providing Metadata to Oracle Support.....	162
A Appendix: ReIM Application Installer Screens	165
B Appendix: Installer Silent Mode	193
C Appendix: Single Sign-On for WebLogic	195
What Do I Need for Single Sign-On?	195
Can Oracle Access Manager Work with Other SSO Implementations?	195
Oracle Single Sign-on Terms and Definitions	196
What Single Sign-On is not.....	197
How Oracle Single Sign-On Works	197
Installation Overview	199
User Management.....	199
D Appendix: URL Reference	201
JDBC URL for a Database	201
E Appendix: BI User and Group LDIF Entries	203
BI_User.ldif Entries.....	203
BI_Group.ldifs Entries.....	204
F Appendix: Common Installation Errors.....	205
ConcurrentModificationException in Installer GUI.....	205
Warning: Could not find X Input Context.....	205
GUI screens fail to open when running Installer.....	205
Hostname Verification Error when SSL is used.....	206
G Appendix: Setting Up Password Stores with wallets/credential stores.....	207
About Database Password Stores and Oracle Wallet	207
Setting Up Password Stores for Database User Accounts.....	208
Setting up Wallets for Database User Accounts	209
For RMS, RWMS, RPM Batch using sqlplus or sqlldr, RETL, RMS, RWMS, and ARI	209
Setting up RETL Wallets	211
For Java Applications (SIM, ReIM, RPM, RIB, AIP, Alloc, ReSA, RETL).....	212
How does the Wallet Relate to the Application?	215
How does the Wallet Relate to Java Batch Program use?.....	215
Database Credential Store Administration.....	215
Managing Credentials with WSLT/OPSS Scripts	217

listCred	218
updateCred	219
createCred	220
deleteCred	220
modifyBootStrapCredential	220
addBootStrapCredential	222
Quick Guide for Retail Password Stores (db wallet, java wallet, DB credential stores)	223
G Appendix: Installation Order	233
Enterprise Installation Order.....	233

Send Us Your Comments

Oracle Retail Invoice Matching, Installation Guide, Release 15.0.1

Oracle welcomes customers' comments and suggestions on the quality and usefulness of this document.

Your feedback is important, and helps us to best meet your needs as a user of our products. For example:

- Are the implementation steps correct and complete?
- Did you understand the context of the procedures?
- Did you find any errors in the information?
- Does the structure of the information help you with your tasks?
- Do you need different information or graphics? If so, where, and in what format?
- Are the examples correct? Do you need more examples?

If you find any errors or have any other suggestions for improvement, then please tell us your name, the name of the company who has licensed our products, the title and part number of the documentation and the chapter, section, and page number (if available).

Note: Before sending us your comments, you might like to check that you have the latest version of the document and if any concerns are already addressed. To do this, access the new Applications Release Online Documentation CD available on My Oracle Support and www.oracle.com. It contains the most current Documentation Library plus all documents revised or released recently.

Send your comments to us using the electronic mail address: retail-doc_us@oracle.com

Please give your name, address, electronic mail address, and telephone number (optional).

If you need assistance with Oracle software, then please contact your support representative or Oracle Support Services.

If you require training or instruction in using Oracle software, then please contact your Oracle local office and inquire about our Oracle University offerings. A list of Oracle offices is available on our Web site at www.oracle.com.

Preface

Oracle Retail Installation Guides contain the requirements and procedures that are necessary for the retailer to install Oracle Retail products.

Audience

This Installation Guide is written for the following audiences:

- Database administrators (DBA)
- System analysts and designers
- Integrators and implementation staff

Related Documents

For more information, see the following documents in the Oracle Retail Invoice Matching Release 15.0.1 documentation set:

- *Oracle Retail Invoice Matching Release Notes*
- *Oracle Retail Invoice Matching User Guide*
- *Oracle Retail Invoice Matching Operations Guide*
- *Oracle Retail Invoice Matching Data Model*
- *Oracle Retail Merchandising Implementation Guide*
- *Oracle Retail Merchandising Batch Schedule*
- *Oracle Retail Merchandising Security Guide*

Customer Support

To contact Oracle Customer Support, access My Oracle Support at the following URL:

<https://support.oracle.com>

When contacting Customer Support, please provide the following:

- Product version and program/module name
- Functional and technical description of the problem (include business impact)
- Detailed step-by-step instructions to re-create
- Exact error message received
- Screen shots of each step you take

Review Patch Documentation

When you install the application for the first time, you install either a base release (for example, 15.0) or a later patch release (for example, 15.0.1). If you are installing the base release or additional patch releases, read the documentation for all releases that have occurred since the base release before you begin installation. Documentation for patch releases can contain critical information related to the base release, as well as information about code changes since the base release.

Improved Process for Oracle Retail Documentation Corrections

To more quickly address critical corrections to Oracle Retail documentation content, Oracle Retail documentation may be republished whenever a critical correction is needed. For critical corrections, the republication of an Oracle Retail document may at times **not** be attached to a numbered software release; instead, the Oracle Retail document will simply be replaced on the Oracle Technology Network Web site, or, in the case of Data Models, to the applicable My Oracle Support Documentation container where they reside.

This process will prevent delays in making critical corrections available to customers. For the customer, it means that before you begin installation, you must verify that you have the most recent version of the Oracle Retail documentation set. Oracle Retail documentation is available on the Oracle Technology Network at the following URL:
<http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/documentation/oracle-retail-100266.html>

An updated version of the applicable Oracle Retail document is indicated by Oracle part number, as well as print date (month and year). An updated version uses the same part number, with a higher-numbered suffix. For example, part number E123456-02 is an updated version of a document with part number E123456-01.

If a more recent version of a document is available, that version supersedes all previous versions.

Oracle Retail Documentation on the Oracle Technology Network

Oracle Retail product documentation is available on the following web site:

<http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/documentation/oracle-retail-100266.html>

(Data Model documents are not available through Oracle Technology Network. You can obtain them through My Oracle Support.)

Conventions

Navigate: This is a navigate statement. It tells you how to get to the start of the procedure and ends with a screen shot of the starting point and the statement “the Window Name window opens.”

This is a code sample

It is used to display examples of code

Preinstallation Tasks

This chapter explains the tasks required prior to installation.

Note: Oracle Retail assumes that the retailer has applied all required fixes for supported compatible technologies.

Check Supported Database Server Requirements

General requirements for a database server running Oracle Retail Invoice Matching include:

Supported on:	Versions Supported:
Database Server OS	OS certified with Oracle Database 12cR1 Enterprise Edition. Options are: - Oracle Linux 6 and 7 for x86-64 (Actual hardware or Oracle virtual machine). - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 and 7 for x86-64 (Actual hardware or Oracle virtual machine). - AIX 7.1 (Actual hardware or LPARs) - Solaris 11 SPARC (Actual hardware or logical domains) - HP-UX 11.31 Integrity (Actual hardware, HPVM, or vPars)
Database Server 12cR1	Oracle Database Enterprise Edition 12cR1 (12.1.0.2) with the following specifications: Components: - Oracle Partitioning - Examples CD Oneoffs: 20846438: ORA-600 [KKPAPXFORMFKK2KEY_1] WITH LIST PARTITION 19623450: MISSING JAVA CLASSES AFTER UPGRADE TO JDK 7 20406840: PROC 12.1.0.2 THROWS ORA-600 [17998] WHEN PRECOMPILING BY 'OTHER' USER 20925154: ORA-39126: WORKER UNEXPECTED FATAL ERROR IN KUPW\$WORKER GATHER_PARSE_ITEMS JAVA RAC only: 21260431: APPSST 12C : GETTING ORA-4031 AFTER 12C UPGRADE 21373473: INSTANCE TERMINATED AS LMD0 AND LMD2 HUNG FOR MORE THAN 70 SECS Other components: - Perl interpreter 5.0 or later - X-Windows interface - JDK1.7

Note: By default, JDK is at 1.6. After installing the 12.1.0.2 binary, apply patch 19623450. Follow the instructions on Oracle Database Java Developer's Guide 12c Release 1 to upgrade JDK to 1.7. The Guide is available at <http://docs.oracle.com/database/121/JJDEV/chone.htm#JJDEV01000>.

Check Supported Application Server Requirements

General requirements for an application server capable of running the Oracle Retail Invoice Matching application include the following:

Supported on:	Versions Supported:
Application Server OS	OS certified with Oracle Fusion Middleware 12c 12.1.3. Options are: ▪ Oracle Linux 6 and 7 for x86-64 (Actual hardware or Oracle virtual machine) ▪ Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 and 7 for x86-64 (Actual hardware or Oracle virtual machine) ▪ AIX 7.1 (Actual hardware or LPARs) ▪ Solaris 11.2 SPARC (Actual hardware or logical domains) ▪ HP-UX 11.31 Integrity (Actual hardware, HPVM, or vPars)

Supported on:	Versions Supported:
Application Server	Oracle Fusion Middleware 12c 12.1.3 Components: - Oracle Fusion Middleware Infrastructure 12c (12.1.3) (WLS and ADF included) - ADF Patches: 17575028-EXISTS VIEW CRITERIA FAIL IN 12.1.2.0.0 WHEN VO SOURCE IS SQL QUERY 19771991-CLASSCASTEXCEPTION WHEN FILTERING AF:TABLE COLUMN OF TYPE DATE / ARRAYLIST DURIN 20608945-MERGE REQUEST ON TOP OF 12.1.3.0.0 FOR BUGS 20182987 18978726 - Oracle Enterprise Manager 12.1.3 - Oracle Identity Management 11g Release 1 (11.1.1.9) Note: Oracle Internet Directory (OID) is the supported LDAP directory for Oracle Retail products. For alternate LDAP directories, refer to Oracle WebLogic documentation set. Java: - JDK 1.7+ 64 bit Optional (required for Operational Insights) - Oracle BI EE 11.1.1.9 Optional (required for SSO) - Oracle BI EE 11.1.1.9 (for Operational Insights) - Oracle WebTier 11g (11.1.1.9) - Oracle Access Manager 11g Release 2 (11.1.2.3) Note: A separate WebLogic 10.3.6 installation is required for Oracle Access Manager 11g(11.1.2.3) - Oracle Access Manager Agent (WebGate) 11g Release 2 (11.1.2.3) - Oracle Directory Services Manager (ODSM) 11.1.1.9

Verify Single Sign-On

If ReIM will not be deployed in a Single Sign-On environment, skip this section.

If Single Sign-On is to be used, verify the Oracle Identity Management 11gR1 version 11.1.1.9 has been installed along with the components listed in the above Application Server requirements section. Verify if the Access Manager Agent is registered with the Oracle Access Manager 11gR2 11.1.2.3 as a partner application.

Check Supported Client PC and Web Browser Requirements

Requirement	Version
Operating system	Windows 7,8
Display resolution	1024x768 or higher
Processor	2.6GHz or higher
Memory	1GByte or higher
Networking	intranet with at least 10Mbps data rate
Oracle (Sun) Java Runtime Environment	Java 1.7+
Browser	Microsoft Internet Explorer 11 Mozilla Firefox Extended Support Release 38.0

Supported Oracle Retail Products

Requirement	Version
Oracle Retail Merchandising System (RMS)/Oracle Retail Trade Management (RTM)/Oracle Retail Sales Audit (ReSA)	15.0.1
Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management (SIM) (by way of RMS)	15.0.1
Oracle Retail Insights	15.0

UNIX User Account Privileges to Install the Software

A UNIX user account is needed to install the software. The UNIX user that is used to install the software should have write access to the WebLogic server installation files. For example, oretail.

Note: Installation steps will fail when trying to modify files under the WebLogic installation, unless the user has write access.

Supported Oracle Applications

Requirement	Version
Oracle E-Business Suite (Accounts Payable)	Oracle E-Business Suite 12.2.4 integration is supported using the Retail Financial Integration 15.0 for Oracle Retail Merchandising Suite and Oracle E-Business Suite Financials. See the <i>RFI installation and upgrade Guide</i> for specific version information.
Oracle PeopleSoft Financials	Oracle PeopleSoft Financials 9.2, integration is supported using the Oracle Retail Financial Integration for Oracle Retail Merchandising Suite and Oracle PeopleSoft Financials. See the <i>Oracle Retail Financial Integration for Oracle Retail Merchandise Operations Management and Oracle E-Business Suite or PeopleSoft Financials</i> for specific version information.

RAC and Clustering

Oracle Retail Invoice Matching has been validated to run in two configurations on Linux:

Standalone WebLogic and Database installations

Real Application Cluster Database and WebLogic Server Clustering

The Oracle Retail products have been validated against a 12.1.0.2 RAC database. When using a RAC database, all JDBC connections should be configured to use THIN connections rather than OCI connections. It is suggested that if you do use OCI connections, the Oracle Retail products database be configured in the tnsnames.ora file used by the WebLogic Server installations.

Clustering for WebLogic Server 12.1.3 is managed as an Active-Active cluster accessed through a Load Balancer. Validation has been completed utilizing a RAC 12.1.0.2 Oracle Internet Directory database with the WebLogic 12.1.3 cluster. It is suggested that a Web Tier 11.1.1.9 installation be configured to reflect all application server installations if SSO will be utilized.

References for Configuration:

- Oracle® Fusion Middleware High Availability Guide 11g Release 1 (11.1.1) Part Number E10106-09
- Oracle Real Application Clusters Administration and Deployment Guide 12c Release 1 (12.1) E48838-10

Database Installation Tasks

The ReIM database objects are bundled with the RMS database schema installer. To install the ReIM database objects follow the *Oracle Retail Merchandising System Installation Guide* to run the database schema installer, and select the ReIM option on the product selection page.

Application Installation Tasks

Before proceeding, you must install Oracle WebLogic 12.1.3 using Fusion Middleware Infrastructure with ADF.

These are the other prerequisites before installing Oracle Retail Invoice Matching application:

- Install WebLogic domain with ADF and EM (Enterprise Manager). Managed server used to install ReIM must be set up with ADF libraries extended.
- Set up MDS schema Datasource in Enterprise Manager (EM).
- Configuration of OID Authenticator in WebLogic domain
- Load LDIF files in LDAP to create Users and Roles

It is assumed Oracle database has already been configured and loaded with the appropriate RMS and Oracle Retail Invoice Matching schemas for your installation.

MDS schema, OPSS schema and other required schemas for ADF must be created using RCU utility. Steps to create the schemas are explained in this document.

Installing a separate domain as part of ADF configuration is recommended.

The Oracle Retail Invoice Matching application is deployed to a managed server (example: reim-server) which is created inside the new domain (example: REIMDomain). This managed server must contain all the ADF libraries.

Middleware Infrastructure and WebLogic Server 12c (12.1.3) Installation

Create a directory to install the WebLogic (this will be the MW_HOME):

Example: `mkdir -p /u00/webadmin/products/wls_retail`

1. Set the MW_HOME, JAVA_HOME, and DOMAIN_HOME environment variables:

- ORACLE_HOME should point to your WebLogic installation.
- JAVA_HOME should point to the Java JDK 1.7+. This is typically the same JDK which is being used by the WebLogic domain where application is getting installed.
- DOMAIN_HOME should point to the full path of the domain into which application will be installed.

Example:

```
$ export MW_HOME=/u00/webadmin/products/wls_retail
$ export DOMAIN_HOME=/u00/webadmin/config/domains/wls_retail/APPNAMEDomain
$ export JAVA_HOME=/u00/webadmin/products/jdk_java
(This should point to the Java which is installed on your server)
$ export PATH=$JAVA_HOME/bin:$PATH
```

Going forward we will use the above references for further installations.

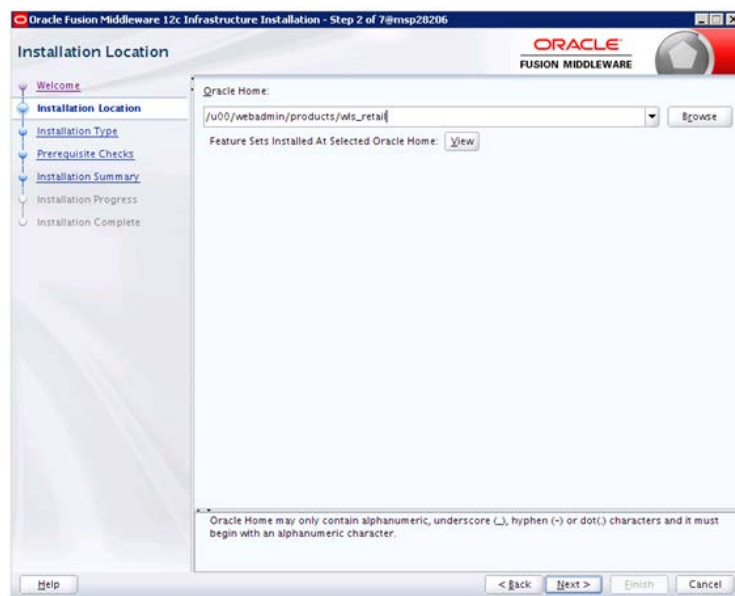
2. Set the system environment variable MW_HOME to the new directory then cd to location where the jar is downloaded and run the installer using the following command:

```
./ java -jar ./fmw_12.1.3.0.0_infrastructure.jar
```

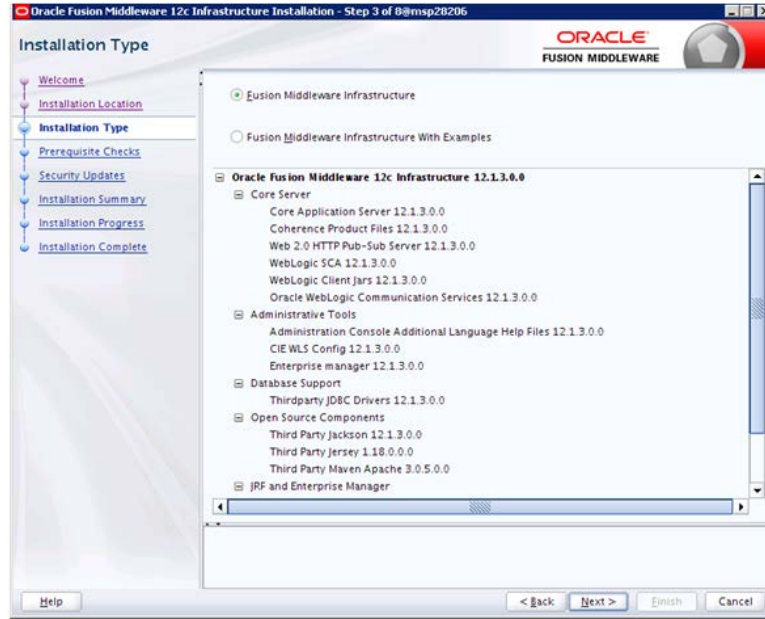
3. Welcome screen appears. Click **Next**.



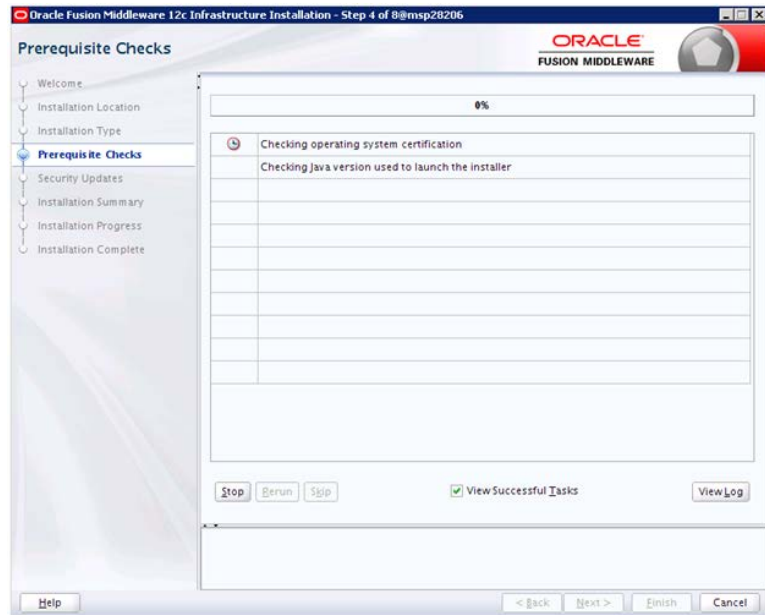
4. Enter the following and click **Next**.
Oracle home =<Path to the middleware home>
Example:
/u00/webadmin/products/wls_retail



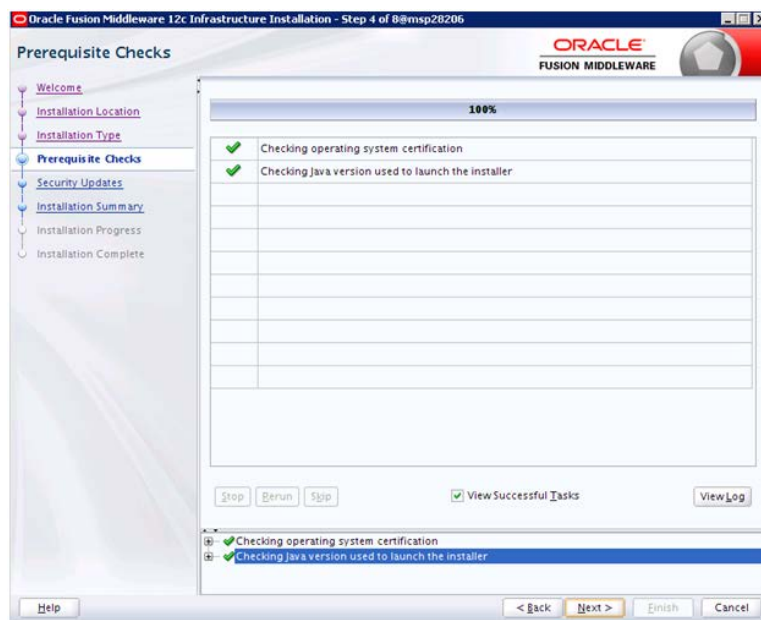
5. Select install type 'Fusion Middleware Infrastructure'. Click **Next**.



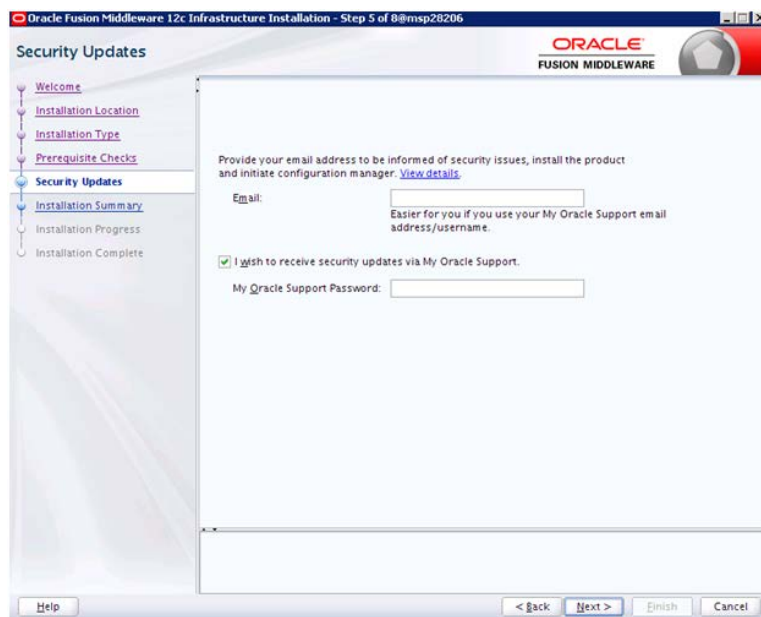
This screen will verify that the system meets the minimum necessary requirements.

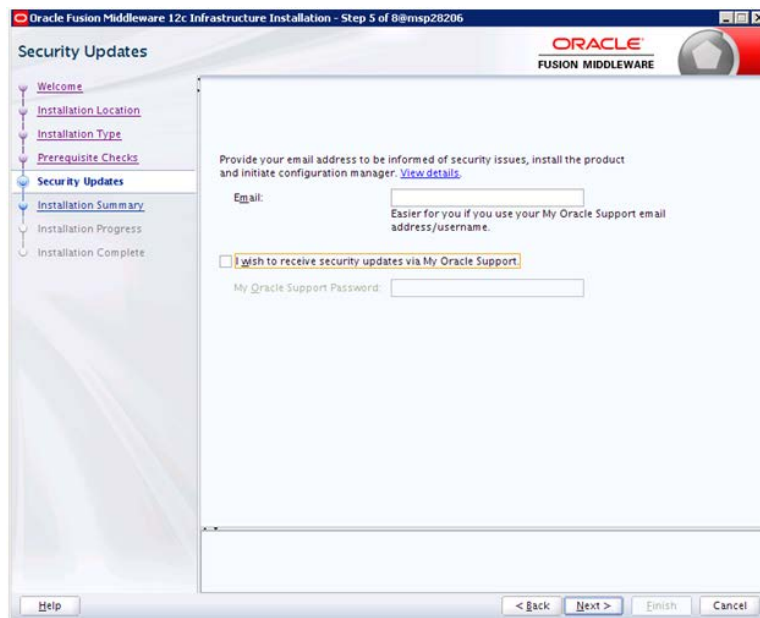


6. Click Next.

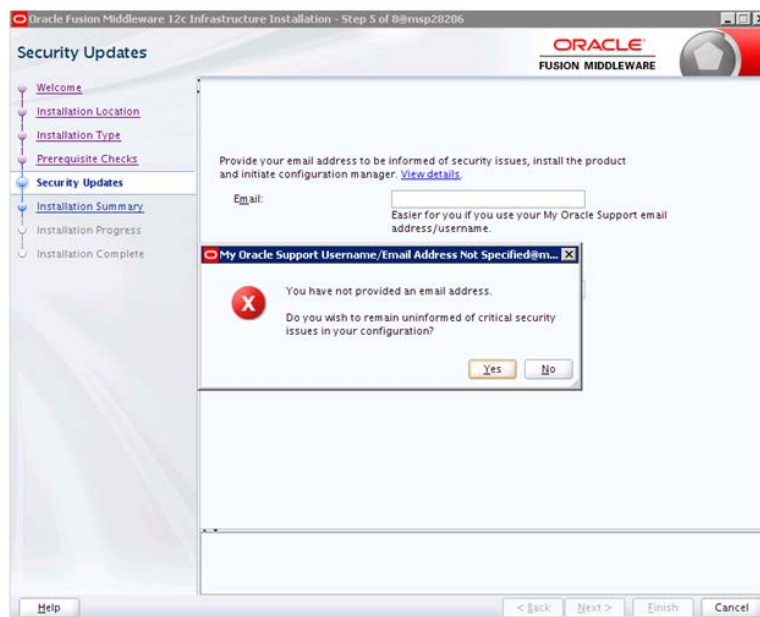


7. If you already have an Oracle Support account, use this screen to indicate how you would like to receive security updates.
8. If you do not have one or if you want to skip this step, clear the check box and verify your selection in the follow-up dialog box.
9. Click Next.

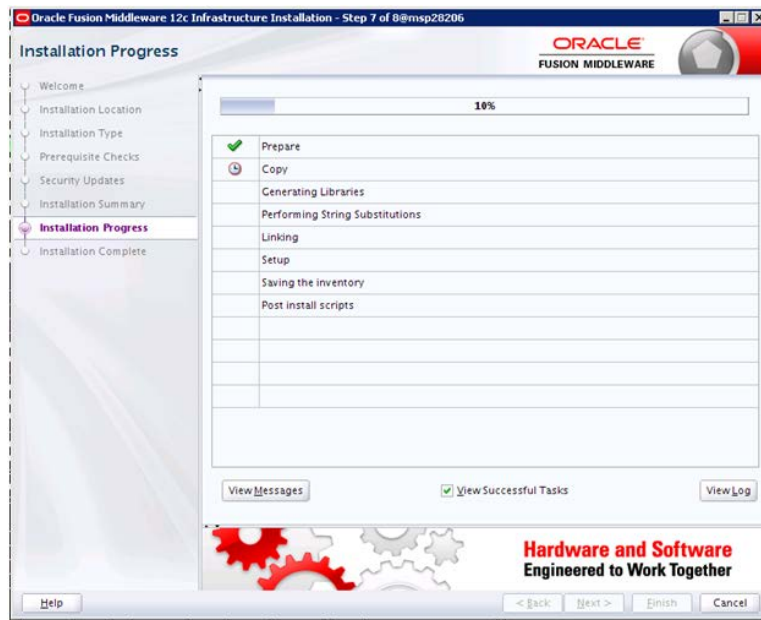




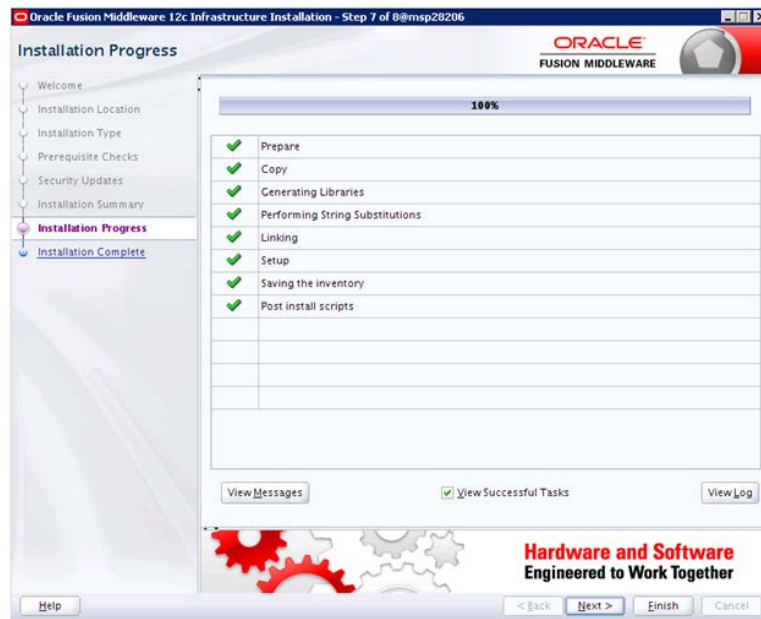
10. Click Next.



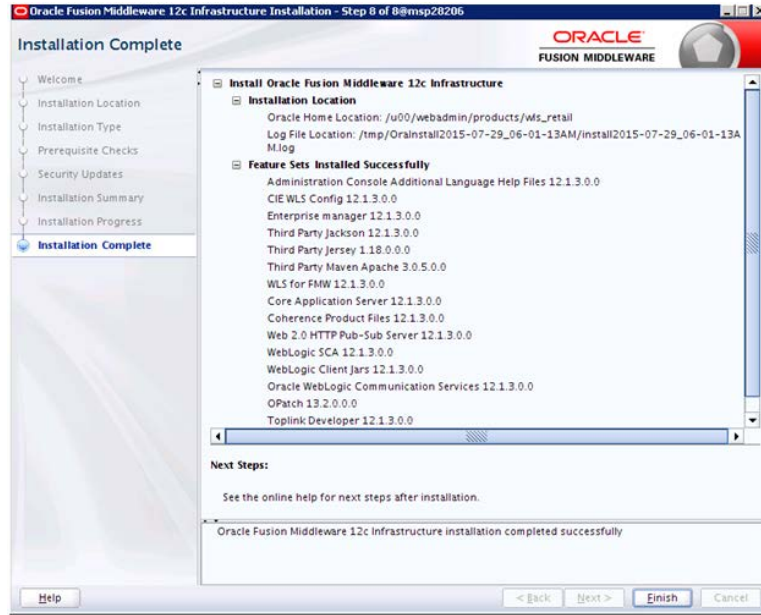
11. Click Yes.



12. Click Next.



13. Click Finish.



14. Continue with RCU installation.

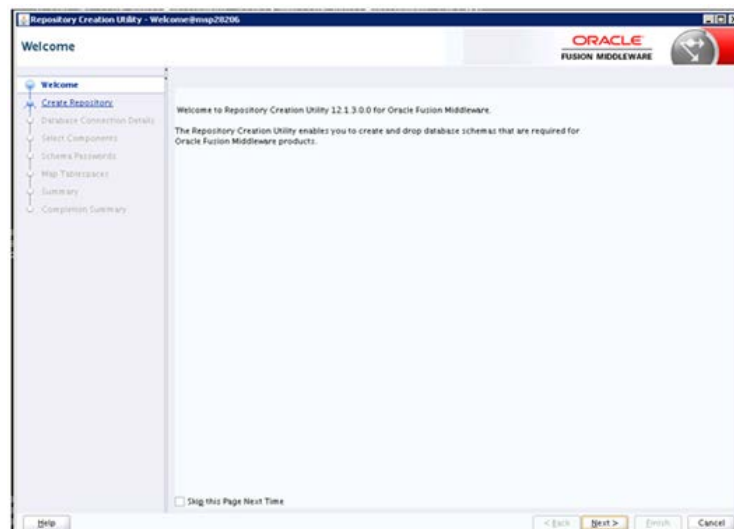
Install RCU Database Schemas

The RCU database schemas are required for the installation of retail application and configuration of domain.

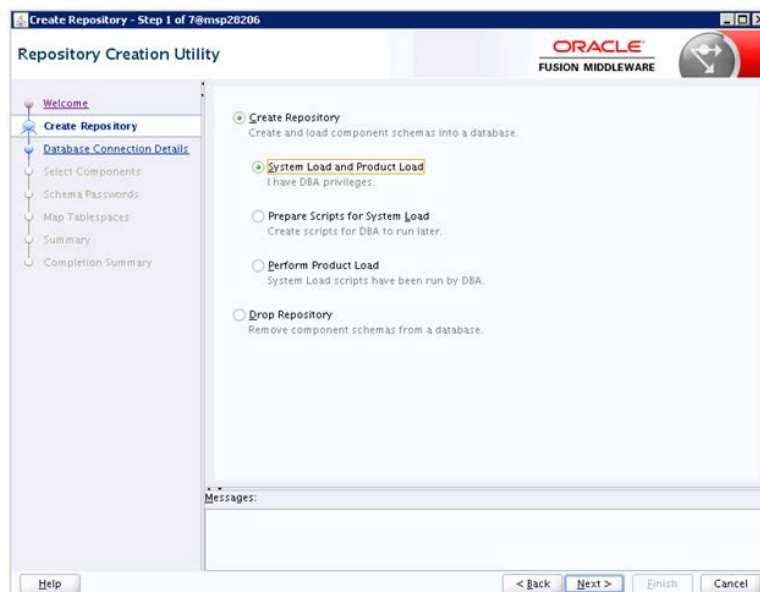
Note: You need 'SYS' user privileges to install the RCU database schemas.

The following steps are provided for the creation of the database schemas:

1. Navigate to the directory into which RCU is installed. For example:
`<MW_HOME>/oracle_common/bin/`
 Run `"./rcu"`
2. Click Next.

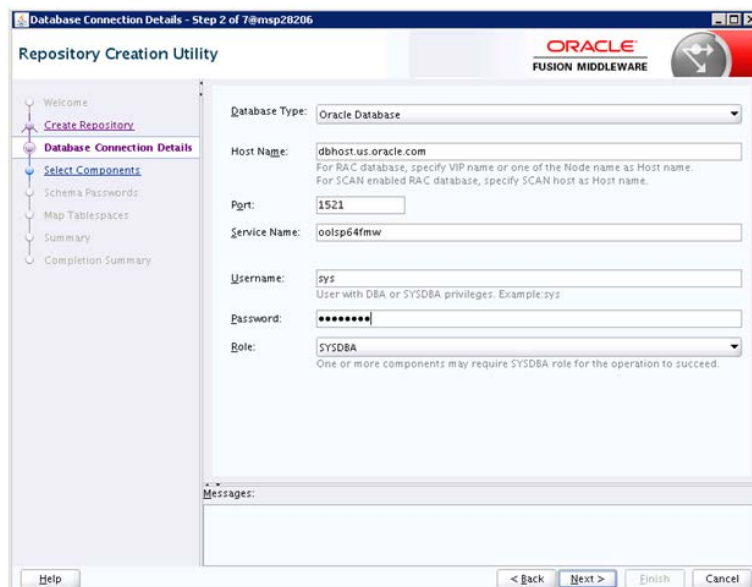


3. Select Create Repository and System Load and Product Load. Click Next.

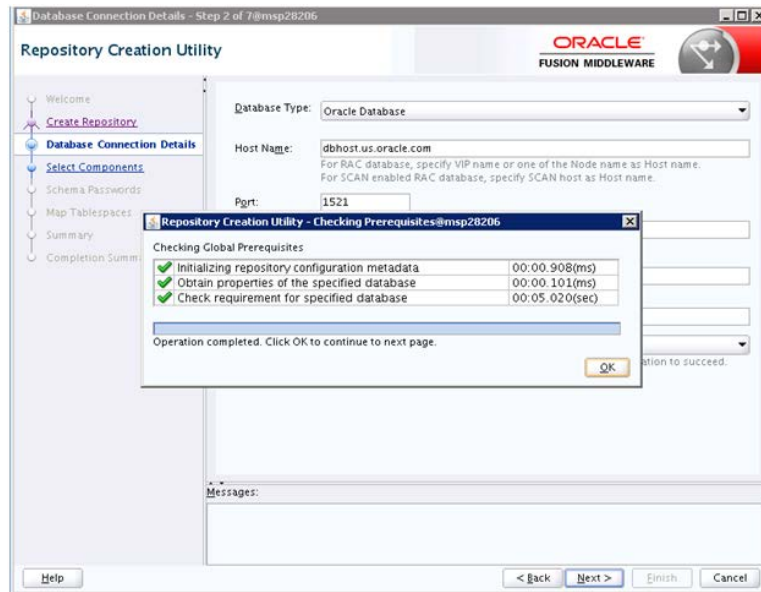


4. Enter database connection details:

- Database Type: Oracle Database
- Host Name: dbhostname.us.oracle.com
- Port: 1521
- Service Name: db servicename
- Username: sys
- Password: <syspassword>
- Role: SYSDBA



5. Click **Next**. The Installer checks prerequisites.
6. When the prerequisite checks are complete, click **OK**. Click **Next**.

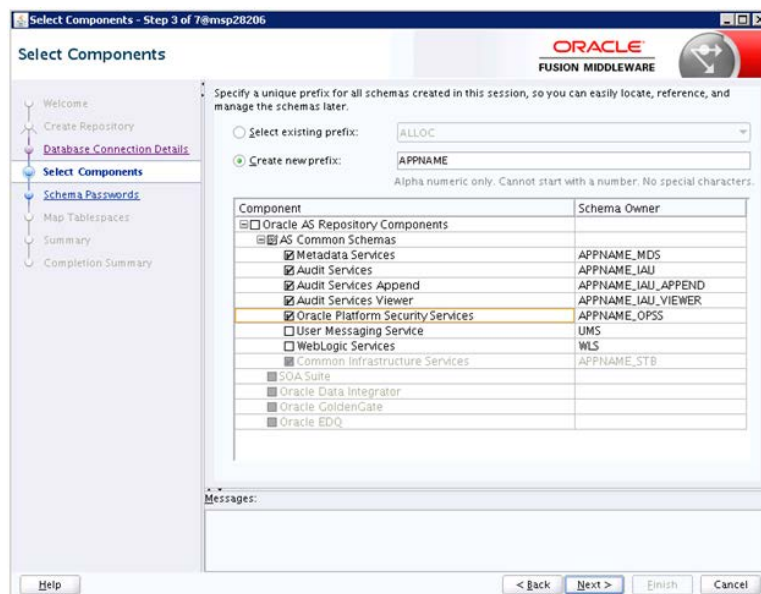


7. Click the **Create a new prefix** option, the prefix name for your schemas should be unique to your application environment.
Example: ReIM, ALLOC, ReSA, etc
8. Select the components to create:
 - Meta Data Services
 - Oracle Platform Security Services

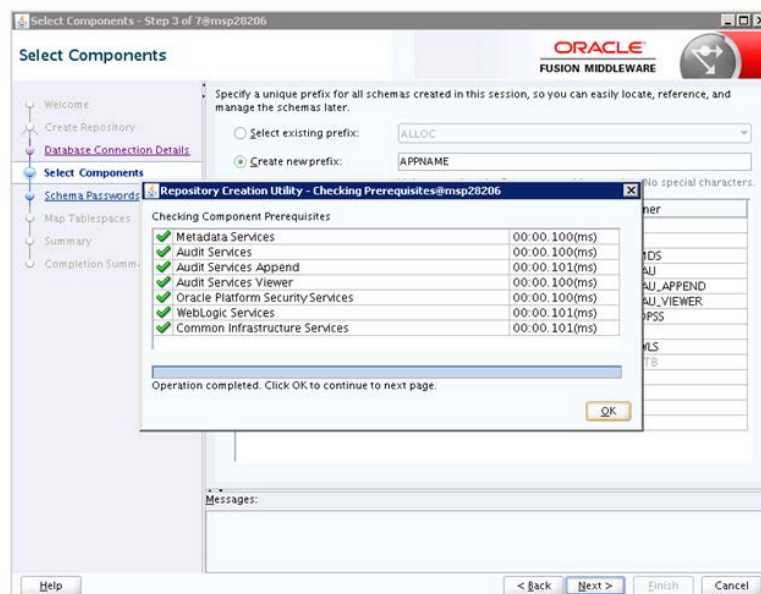
Note: Once OPSS schema is selected, the following dependent schemas will get selected automatically.

- Audit Services
- Audit Services Append
- Audit Services Viewer

Note: STB schema will be already selected as part of the Common Infrastructure component.



9. Click Next.



10. Click OK.

11. Select 'Use same passwords for all schemas'.

12. Enter your password.

Note: This password is needed at the time of ADF domain creation.

Schema Passwords - Step 4 of 7@misp20206

Repository Creation Utility

Define passwords for main and auxiliary schema users.

☒ Use same passwords for all schemas

Password:

Confirm Password:

☐ Use main schema passwords for auxiliary schemas

☐ Specify different passwords for all schemas

Messages:

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

Map Tablespaces - Step 5 of 7@misp20206

Repository Creation Utility

Default and temporary tablespaces for the selected components appear in the table below. To create new tablespaces or modify existing tablespaces, use the 'Manage Tablespaces Button'

Manage Tablespaces

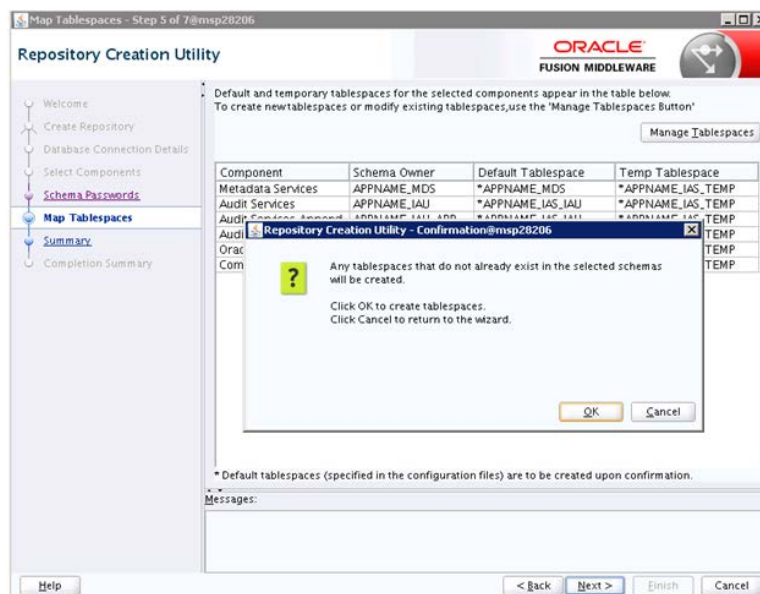
Component	Schema Owner	Default Tablespace	Temp Tablespace
Metadata Services	APPNAME_MDS	*APPNAME_MDS	*APPNAME_IAS_TEMP
Audit Services	APPNAME_IAU	*APPNAME_IAS_IJU	*APPNAME_IAS_TEMP
Audit Services Append	APPNAME_IJU_APP...	*APPNAME_IAS_IJU	*APPNAME_IAS_TEMP
Audit Services Viewer	APPNAME_IJU_VIE...	*APPNAME_IAS_IJU	*APPNAME_IAS_TEMP
Oracle Platform Secu...	APPNAME_OPSS	*APPNAME_IAS_OPSS	*APPNAME_IAS_TEMP
Common Infrastructu...	APPNAME_STB	*APPNAME_STB	*APPNAME_IAS_TEMP

* Default tablespaces (specified in the configuration files) are to be created upon confirmation.

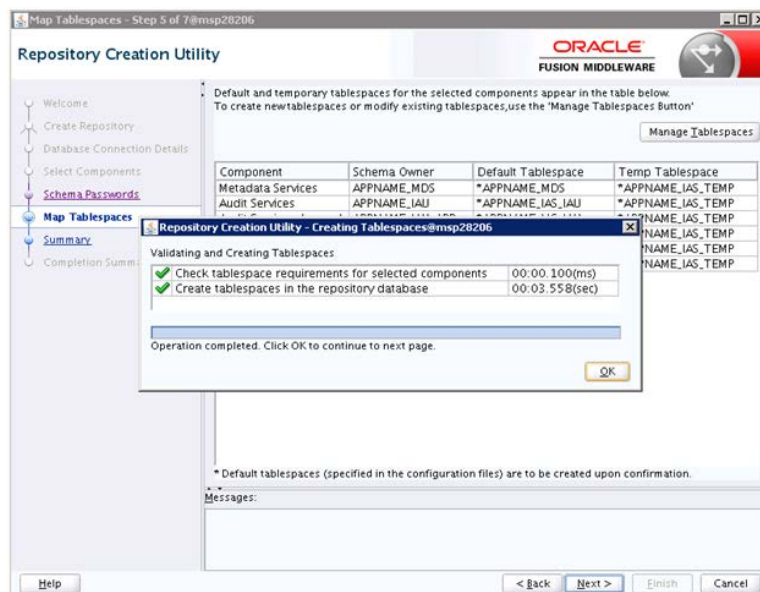
Messages:

< Back Next > Finish Cancel

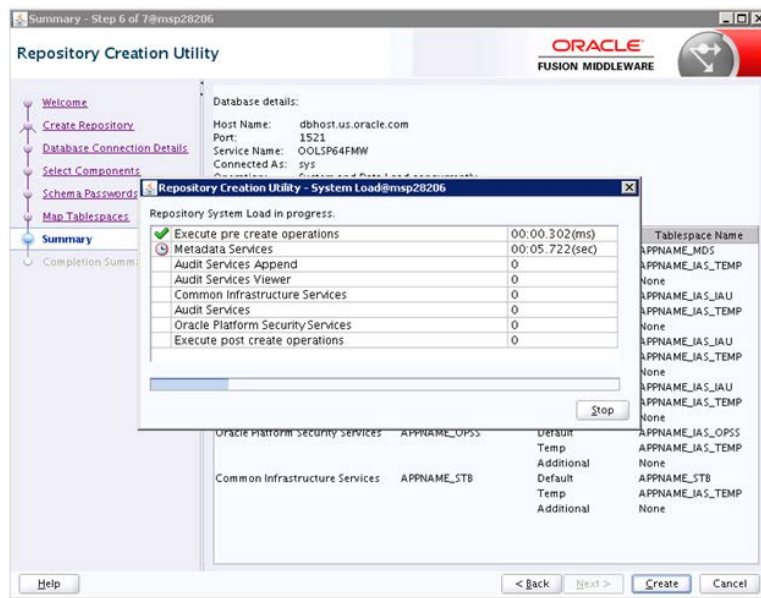
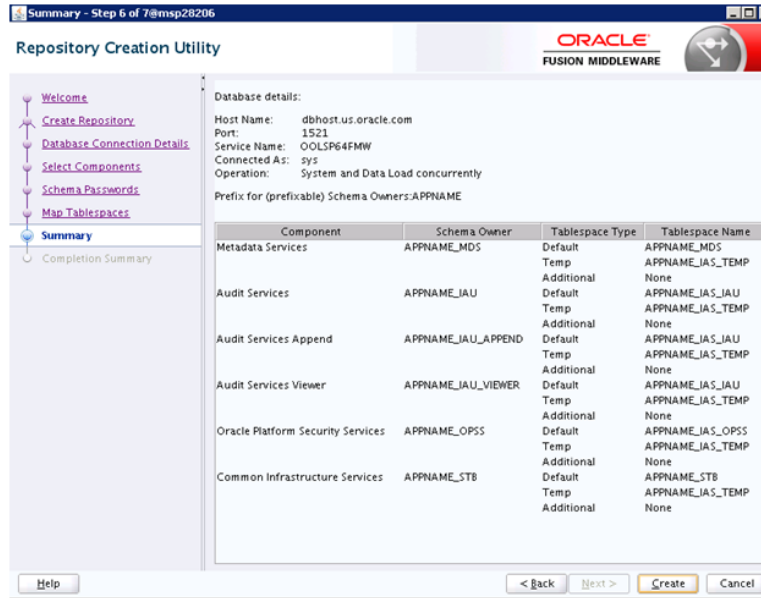
13. Click **Next**. A Repository Creation notification will appear. Click **OK**.



14. Tablespaces are created, and the progress will be displayed in a pop-up notification. When the operation is completed, click OK.



15. Click Create. The schema is created.



Upon successful creation of database schemas, a screen will appear with all the schemas created .

16. Click Close.



Create a New ADF Domain (with managed server and EM)

To create a new domain and managed server with ADF libraries and EM, follow the below steps:

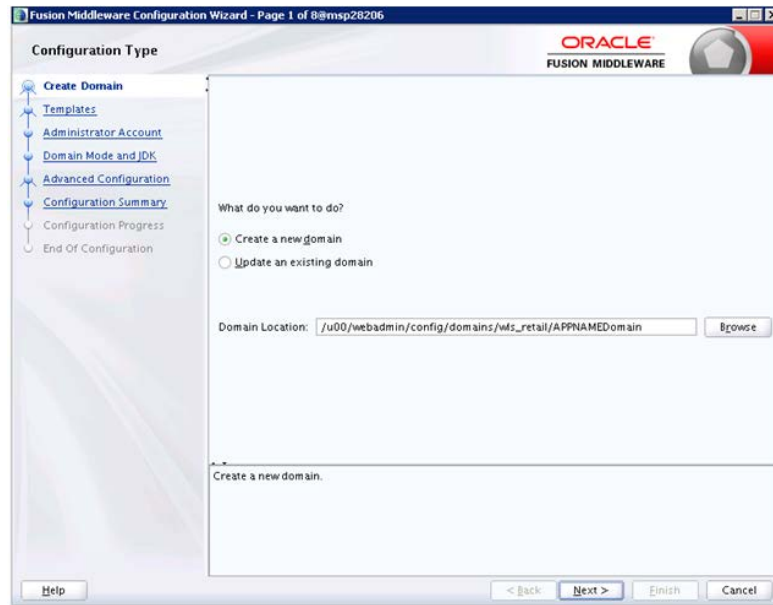
1. Set the environment variables:


```
export JAVA_HOME=<JDK_HOME>
      (Example:/u00/webadmin/products/jdk_java) [JDK_HOME is the location where
      jdk has been installed)
      export PATH=$JAVA_HOME/bin:$PATH
      export ORACLE_HOME=<MW_HOME>/oracle_common
      (Example:/u00/webadmin/products/wls_retail/oracle_common)

      cd $MW_HOME/oracle_common/common/bin
      (MW_HOME is the location where Weblogic has been installed.)
```
2. Run the following command:


```
./config.sh
```
3. Select **Create a new domain**.

Domain location: Specify the path to the <DOMAIN_HOME>
 Example:/u00/webadmin/config/domains/wls_retail/APPNAMEDomain
4. Click **Next**.



5. Select **Create Domain Using Product Templates**.

6. Check the following components:

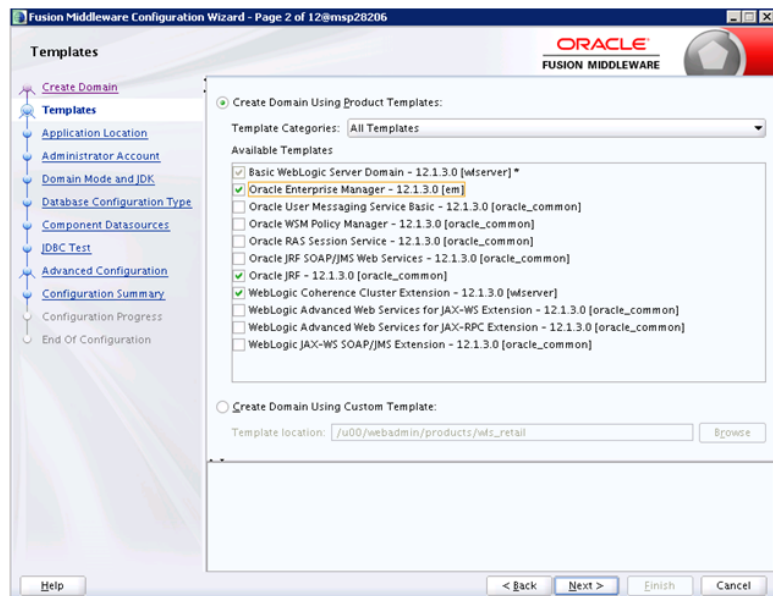
Oracle Enterprise Manager

Note: When Oracle Enterprise Manager component is selected, the following dependent components are selected automatically:

Oracle JRF

Weblogic Coherence Cluster Extension

7. Click **Next**.



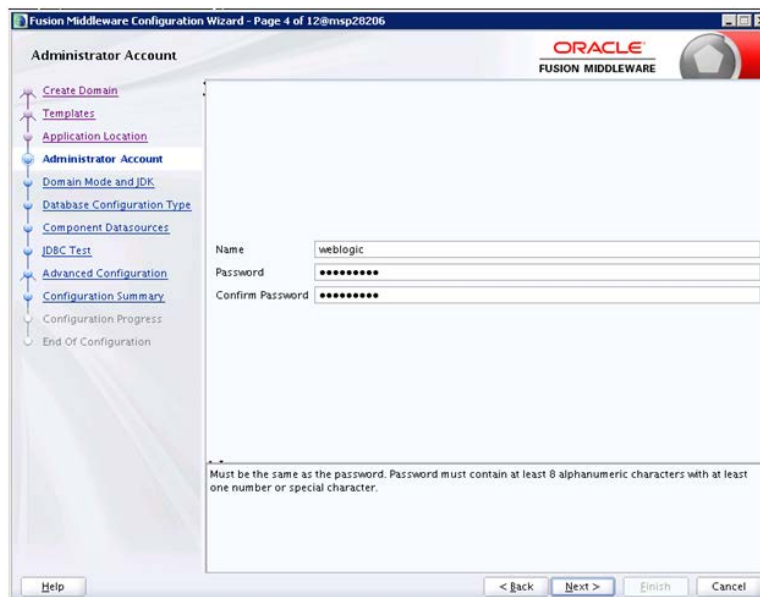
Application location: Application directory location. Example:
/u00/webadmin/config/applications/wls_retail/APPNAMEDomain

8. Click Next.

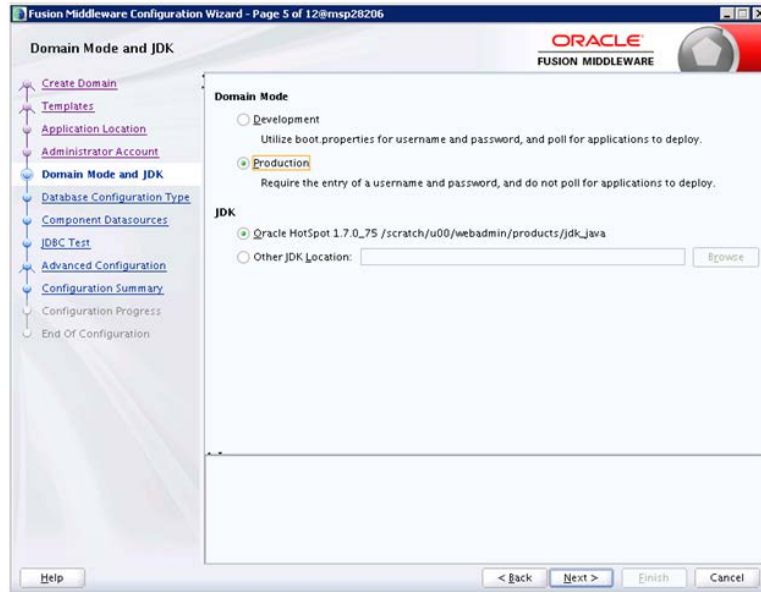


9. Provide the WebLogic administrator credentials and click Next:

- Username: <weblogic administrator user>
- Password: <Password for weblogic administrator user>



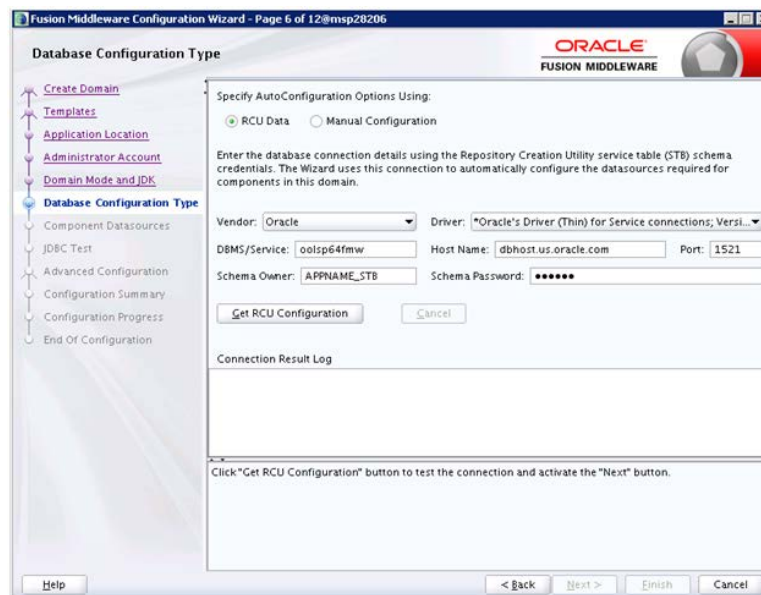
10. Select Domain Mode as Production and the JDK to use (as applicable).



11. Click **Next**.

12. Select **RCU Data**.

- Vendor: Oracle
- DBMS/Service: db servicename
- Host Name: dbhostname.us.oracle.com
- Port: 1521
- Schema Owner: APPNAME_STB (Example: ALLOC_STB, ReSA_STB, etc)
- Password: <Password>. This password which was used for RCU schema creation.



13. Click the **Get RCU Configuration** button.

Database Configuration Type

Specify AutoConfiguration Options Using:
☒ RCU Data ☐ Manual Configuration

Enter the database connection details using the Repository Creation Utility service table (STB) schema credentials. The Wizard uses this connection to automatically configure the datasources required for components in this domain.

Vendor: Oracle Driver: *Oracle's Driver (Thin) for Service connections; Versi...
 DBMS/Service: oolsp64fmw Host Name: dbhost.us.oracle.com Port: 1521
 Schema Owner: APPNAME_STB Schema Password: *****

Connection Result Log
 Connecting to the database server...OK
 Retrieving schema data from database server...OK
 Binding local schema components with retrieved data...OK
 Successfully Done.

Click "Next" button to continue.

14. Click Next.

JDBC Component Schema

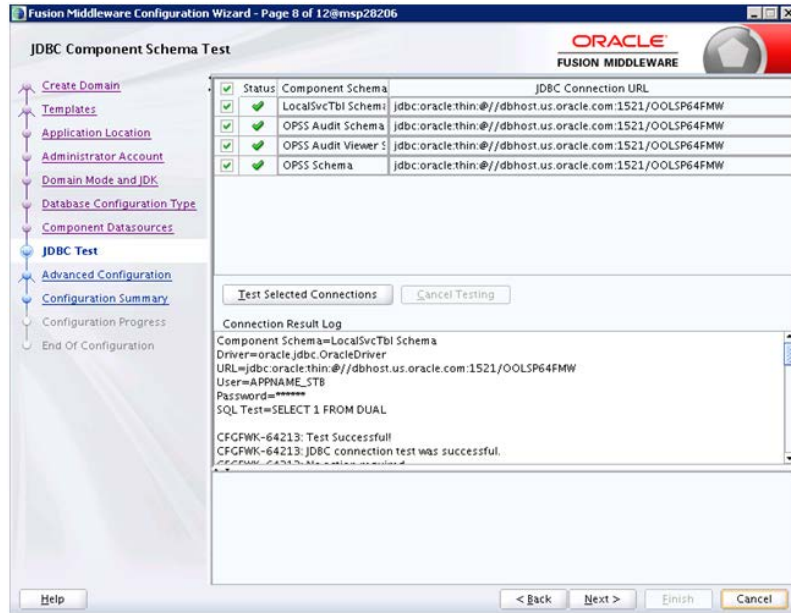
Vendor: Driver:
 DBMS/Service: Host Name: Port:
 Schema Owner: Schema Password:

Oracle RAC configuration for component schemas:
☐ Convert to GridLink ☐ Convert to RAC multi data source ☐ Don't convert

Edits to the data above will affect all checked rows in the table below.

☐	Component Schema	DBMS/Service	Host Name	Port	Schema Owner	Schema Password
☐	LocalSvcTbl Schema	OOLSP64FMW	dbhost.us.oracle	1521	APPNAME_STB	*****
☐	OPSS Audit Schema	OOLSP64FMW	dbhost.us.oracle	1521	APPNAME_IAU	*****
☐	OPSS Audit Viewer Sch	OOLSP64FMW	dbhost.us.oracle	1521	APPNAME_IAU	*****
☐	OPSS Schema	OOLSP64FMW	dbhost.us.oracle	1521	APPNAME_OP	*****

15. Click Next and it will test to make sure it can connect to your datasources.



16. Click **Next** to continue.

17. Select advanced configuration for:

- Administration Server
- Node manager
- Managed Servers, Clusters and Coherence

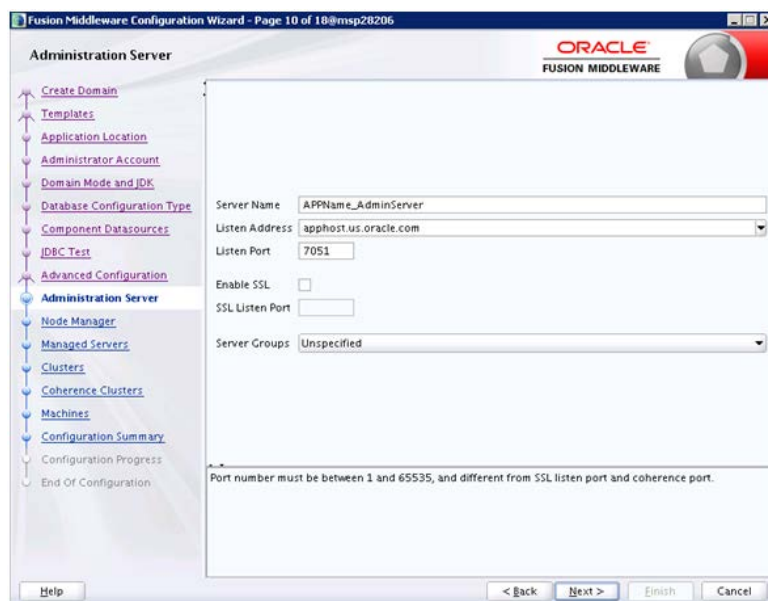


18. Click **Next** to continue.

19. Configure the Administration Server:

- Server Name: <APP name>_AdminServer
- Listen address: Appserver Hostname or IPAddress of the Appserver Host.

- Listen port: <Port for Admin Server> Note: The port used here must be a free port.
- Server Groups: Unspecified



The screenshot shows the 'Administration Server' configuration page of the Fusion Middleware Configuration Wizard. The left sidebar contains a tree view with the following items: Create Domain, Templates, Application Location, Administrator Account, Domain Mode and JDK, Database Configuration Type, Component Datasources, JDBC Test, Advanced Configuration, Administration Server (selected), Node Manager, Managed Servers, Clusters, Coherence Clusters, Machines, Configuration Summary, Configuration Progress, and End Of Configuration. The main content area has the following fields: Server Name (APPNName_AdminServer), Listen Address (apphost.us.oracle.com), Listen Port (7051), Enable SSL (unchecked), SSL Listen Port (empty), and Server Groups (Unspecified). A note at the bottom states: 'Port number must be between 1 and 65535, and different from SSL listen port and coherence port.' Navigation buttons at the bottom include '< Back', 'Next >', 'Finish', and 'Cancel'.

20. Click Next.

21. Configure Node Manager:

- Node manager type: Per domain default location
- Username: <weblogic administrator user>
- Password: <Password for weblogic administrator user>



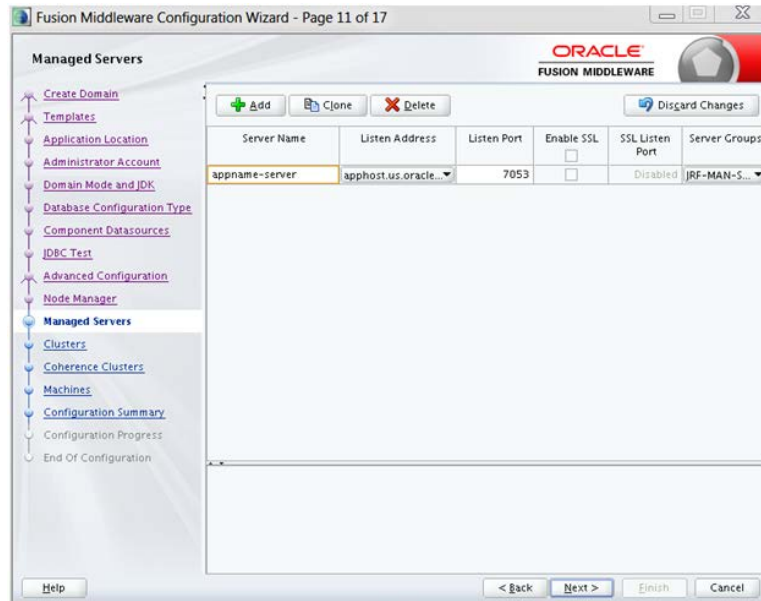
The screenshot shows the 'Node Manager' configuration page of the Fusion Middleware Configuration Wizard. The left sidebar is the same as in the previous screenshot, with 'Node Manager' selected. The main content area has the following fields: Node Manager Type (radio buttons for 'Per Domain Default Location' (selected) and 'Per Domain Custom Location'), Node Manager Home (text field with value 'n1n/config/domains/wls_retail/APPNAMEDomain/nodemanager' and a 'Browse' button), and Manual Node Manager Setup (radio button, which is unselected). Under 'Node Manager Credentials', there are three text fields: Username (weblogic), Password (masked with dots), and Confirm Password (masked with dots). A note at the bottom states: 'Must be the same as the password. Password must contain at least 8 alphanumeric characters with at least one number or special character.' Navigation buttons at the bottom include '< Back', 'Next >', 'Finish', and 'Cancel'.

22. Click Next.

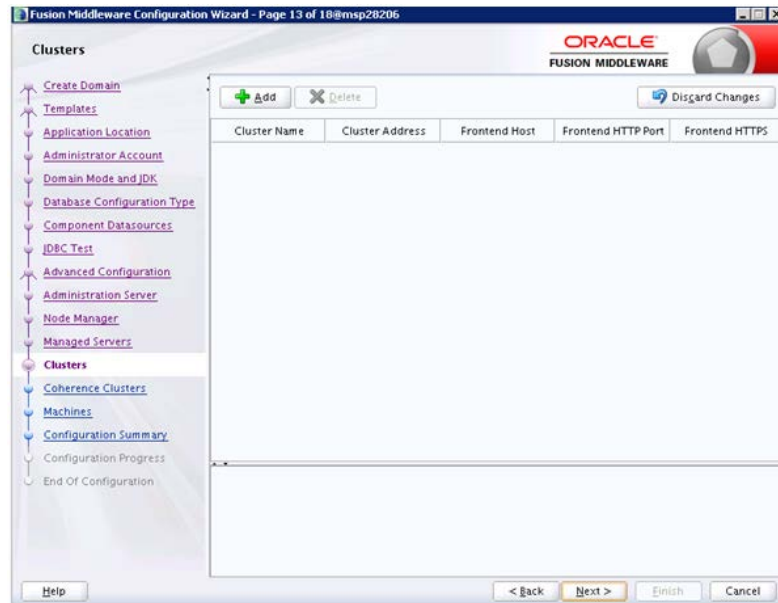
23. Configure Managed Servers with the ADF template.

24. Click the **Add** button.

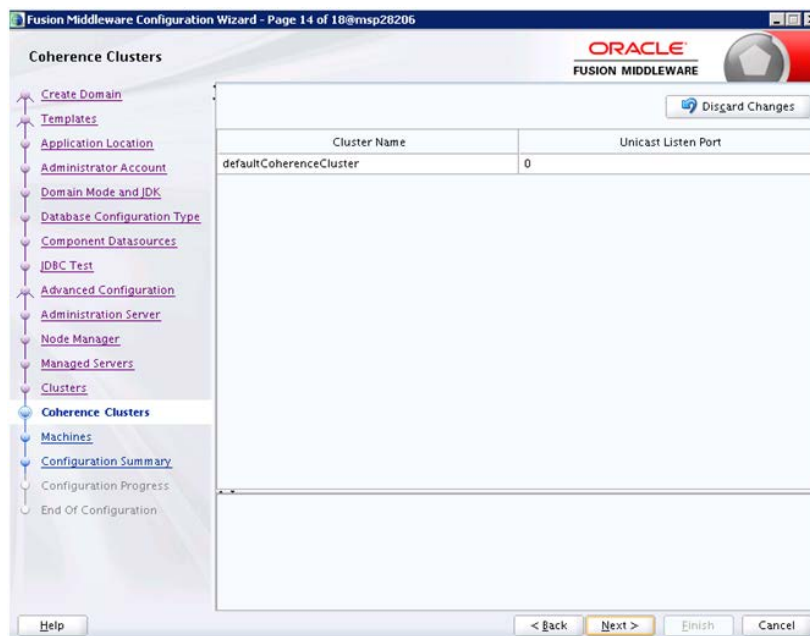
- Server Name: <appname-server>
- Listen address: Appserver Hostname or IPAddress of the Appserver Host
- Listen port: <Port for Managed Server> Note: The port used here must be a free port.
- Server Groups: <JRF-MAN-SVR>



25. Skip Configure Clusters and click **Next**.



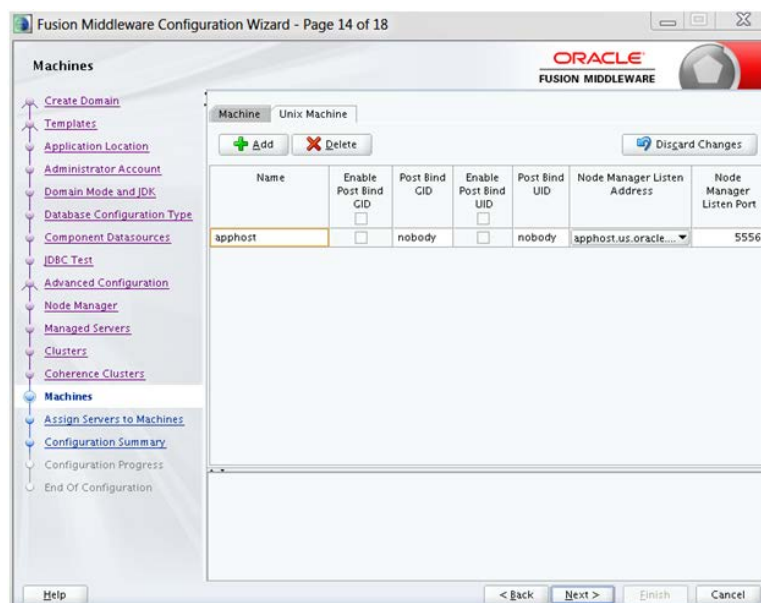
26. No change needed. Click **Next**.



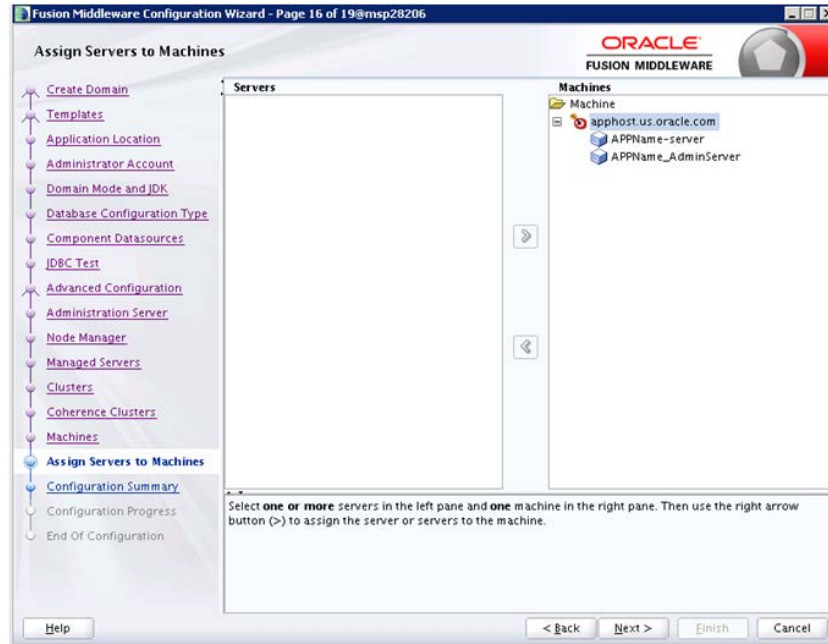
27. Click the Unix Machine tab.

28. Click the **Add** button, configure the machine and click Next.

- Name: apphostname_MACHINE
- Listen address: apphostname or IPAddress
- Listen port: <Port for node manager> Note: The port used here must be a free port.

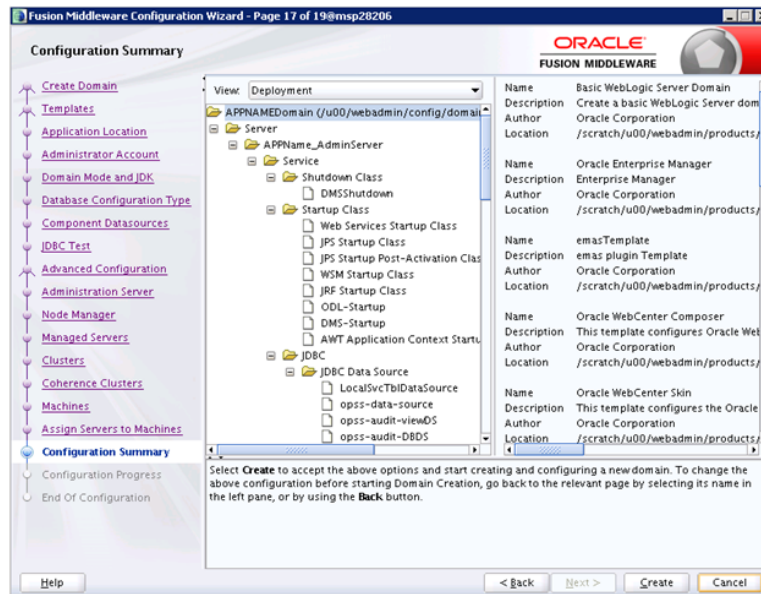


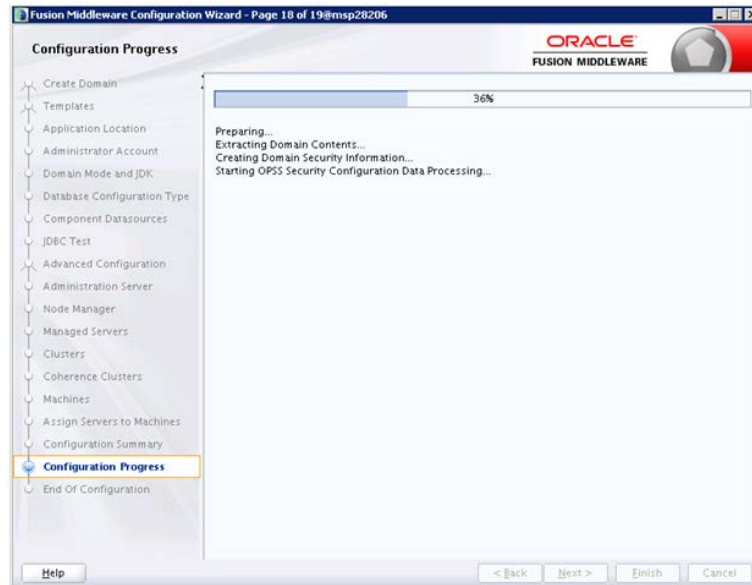
29. Assign the configured Admin server and managed servers to the new machine.



30. Click Next.

31. Click Create.

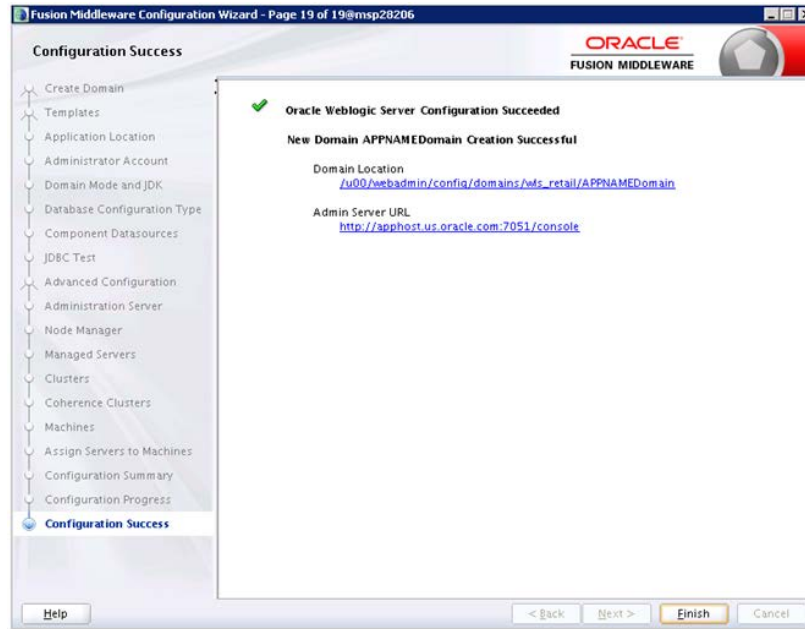




32. Click **Next**.



33. When the process completes, click **Finish**.



Start the Node Manager

1. Start the nodemanager from <DOMAIN_HOME>/bin using the following:
`./startNodeManager.sh`

Start the AdminServer (admin console)

1. Start the WebLogic Domain (Admin Server) from <DOMAIN_HOME>/bin using the following:
`./startWebLogic.sh`
 Provide weblogic username and password when prompted
 Example:
`/u00/webadmin/config/domains/wls_retail/RPMdomain/bin/startWebLogic.sh`
2. Configure boot.properties for starting the Weblogic domain without prompting to username and password using the following command:
3. Create security folder at <DOMAIN_HOME>/servers/<AdminServer>/ and create boot.properties file under <DOMAIN_HOME>/servers/<AdminServer>/security
 The file 'boot.properties' should have the following:

```
-----
username=weblogic
password=<password>
-----
```

In the above, the password value is the password of WebLogic domain which is given at the time of domain creation.

1. Save the boot.properties file and restart the WebLogic server.
2. Access the Weblogic Admin console

Example: `http://<HOST_NAME>:<ADMIN_PORT>/console`

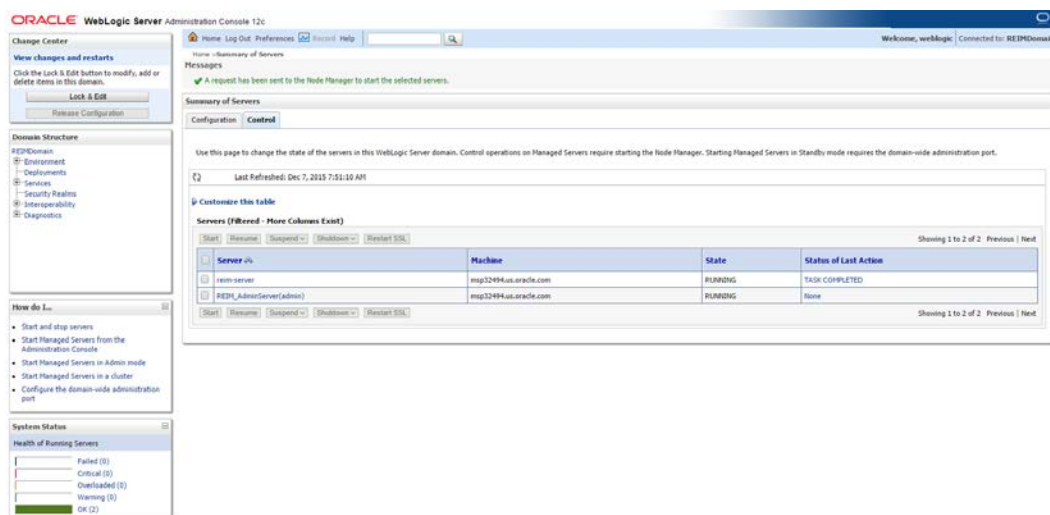
In the below screen, provide username=weblogic and password=<weblogic password>



Start the Managed Server

After NodeManager is started, the managed servers can be started via the admin console.
<http://<host>:<port>/console>

Navigate to Environments -> Servers and click the Control tab. Select reim-server and click **Start**.



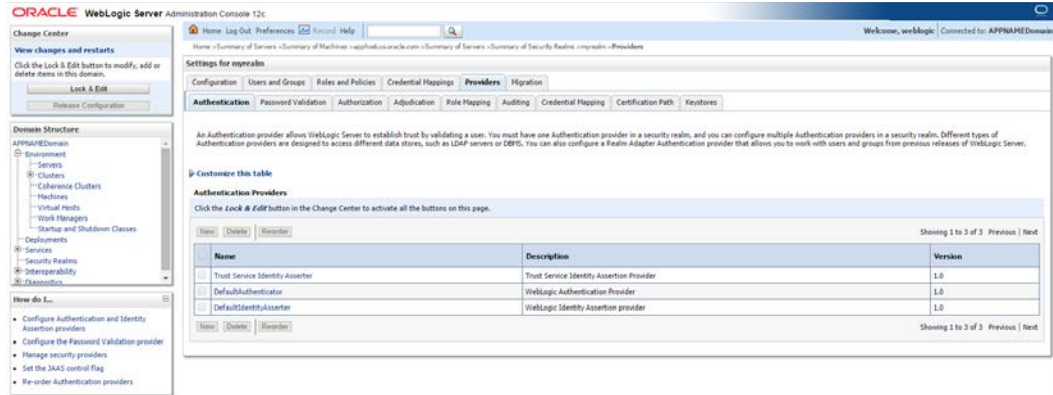
Managed Server should be up and running before configuring further steps

Configuration of OID Provider in WebLogic Domain

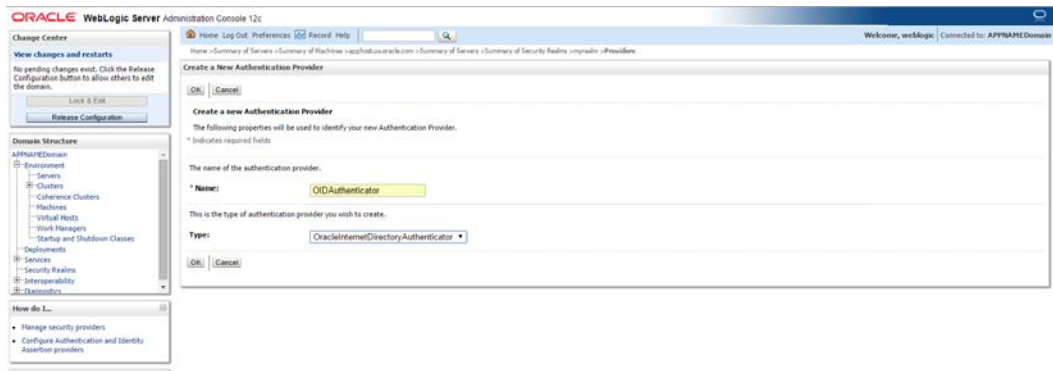
Note: In this section, the base DN “dn=us,dn=oracle,dn=com” is used as an example. Modify this value as per the organisation’s ldap settings.

Perform the following procedure to create providers in the domains created in the previous steps.

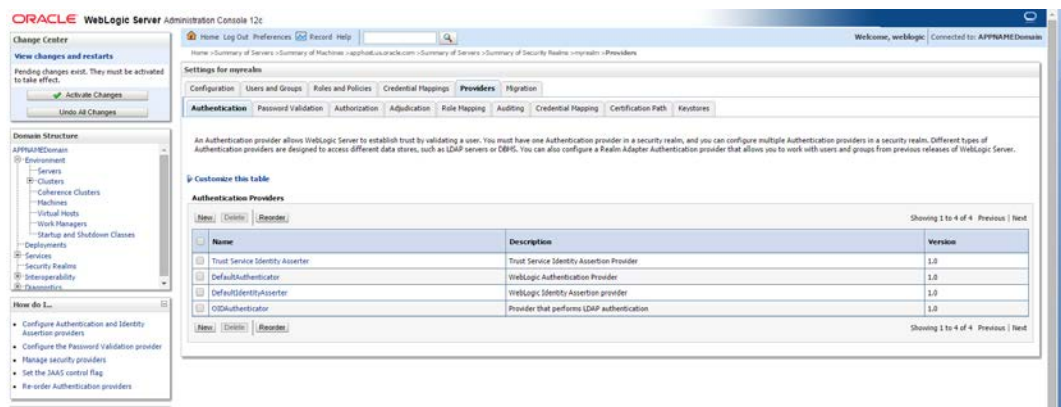
1. Log in to the Administration Console.
<http://<host>:<port>/console/>
2. In the Domain Structure frame, click **Security Realms**.
3. In the Realms table, click myrealm. The Settings for myrealm page is displayed.
4. Click the **Providers** tab.



- Click **Lock & Edit** and then click **New**. The 'Create a New Authentication Provider' page is displayed.



- Enter **OIDAuthenticator** in the Name field and select **OracleInternetDirectoryAuthenticator** as the type. Click **OK**.



- All the providers are displayed. Click **OIDAuthenticator**. Settings of **OIDAuthenticator** are displayed.

ORACLE WebLogic Server Administration Console 12c

Home Log Out Preferences Record Help

Home > Summary of Servers > Summary of Machines > apphost.us.oracle.com > Summary of Servers > Summary of Security Realms > myrealm > Providers > DefaultAuthenticator

Settings for DefaultAuthenticator

Configuration Performance Migration

Common Provider Specific

Save

This page displays basic information about this WebLogic Authentication provider. You can also use this page to set the JAAS Control Flag.

Name: DefaultAuthenticator

Description: WebLogic Authentication Provider

Version: 1.0

Control Flag: SUFFICIENT

Save

Change Center

View changes and restarts

Pending changes exist. They must be activated to take effect.

Activate Changes

Undo All Changes

Domain Structure

APPNAMEDomain

- Environment
 - Servers
 - Clusters
 - Coherence Clusters
 - Machines
 - Virtual Hosts
 - Work Managers
 - Startup and Shutdown Classes
- Deployments
- Services
- Security Realms
- Interoperability
- Diagnostics

How do I...

- Configure the Oracle Internet Directory Authentication provider
- Configure Authentication and Identity Assertion providers
- Configure the Password Validation provider
- Set the JAAS control flag
- Manage security providers

System Status

- Set the Control Flag field to SUFFICIENT and click **Save**.
- From the Providers tab, click on DefaultAuthenticator -> Configuration tab -> Common tab. Update the Control Flag to SUFFICIENT.
- Click **Save**.

ORACLE WebLogic Server Administration Console 12c

Home Log Out Preferences Record Help

Home > Summary of Servers > Summary of Machines > apphost.us.oracle.com > Summary of Servers > Summary of Security Realms > myrealm > Providers > DefaultAuthenticator

Settings for DefaultAuthenticator

Configuration Performance Migration

Common Provider Specific

Save

This page displays basic information about this WebLogic Authentication provider. You can also use this page to set the JAAS Control Flag.

Name: DefaultAuthenticator

Description: WebLogic Authentication Provider

Version: 1.0

Control Flag: SUFFICIENT

Save

Change Center

View changes and restarts

Pending changes exist. They must be activated to take effect.

Activate Changes

Undo All Changes

Domain Structure

APPNAMEDomain

- Environment
 - Servers
 - Clusters
 - Coherence Clusters
 - Machines
 - Virtual Hosts
 - Work Managers
 - Startup and Shutdown Classes
- Deployments
- Services
- Security Realms
- Interoperability
- Diagnostics

How do I...

- Configure Authentication and Identity Assertion providers
- Configure the Password Validation provider
- Set the JAAS control flag
- Manage security providers

System Status

11. From the Providers tab, click the “OIDAuthenticator” (you just created), in the configuration -> Provider Specific tab enter your LDAP connection details:

The values shown below are examples only. You should match the entries to your OID.

- Host: <oidhost>
- Port: <oidport>
- Principal: cn=orcladmin
- Credential: <password>
- Confirm Credential: <password>
- User Base DN: cn=users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com
- Check ‘Use Retrieved User Name as Principal’.
- Check ‘SSL Enabled’ if the OID is SSL enabled. Port mentioned above must be an SSL port if OID is enabled.

The screenshot displays the Oracle WebLogic Server Administration Console. The left sidebar shows the 'Domain Structure' tree with 'Services' expanded, and 'Security Realms' selected. The main content area is titled 'Settings for OIDAuthenticator' and has two tabs: 'Configuration' and 'Provider Specific'. The 'Provider Specific' tab is active, showing fields for 'Host' (idmhost.us.oracle.com), 'Port' (3060), 'Principal' (cn=orcladmin), 'Credential' (masked), and 'Confirm Credential' (masked). There is an 'SSL Enabled' checkbox. Below these are 'Users' settings: 'User Base DN' (cn=Users,dc=us,dc=oracle.d), 'All Users Filter' (&(cn=*)(objectclass=person)), and 'User From Name Filter' (&(cn=%u)(objectclass=persc)).

12. Modify the following:

- Group Base DN: cn=Groups,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com

Groups

Group Base DN:

All Groups Filter:

Group From Name Filter:

Group Search Scope:

Group Membership Searching:

Max Group Membership Search Level:

☐ **Ignore Duplicate Membership**

13. Check Propagate Cause For Login Exception

☒ **Propagate Cause For Login Exception**

☒ **Cache Enabled**

Cache Size:

Cache TTL:

GUID Attribute:

14. Click Save.

15. Click the Providers tab in the 'myrealm' security realm.

The screenshot shows the WebLogic Server Administration Console interface. On the left, the 'Change Center' panel indicates that pending changes exist and must be activated. Below it, the 'Domain Structure' tree shows the hierarchy: APPNAMEDomain > Environment > Servers > Clusters > Coherence Clusters > Machines > Virtual Hosts > Work Managers > Startup and Shutdown Classes > Deployments > Services > Security Realms. The 'How do I...' panel lists tasks such as 'Configure Authentication and Identity Assertion providers' and 'Re-order Authentication providers'. The main console area displays the 'Settings for myrealm' page, with the 'Providers' tab selected. The 'Authentication Providers' table lists four providers: Trust Service Identity Asserter, DefaultAuthenticator, DefaultIdentityAsserter, and OIDAuthenticator. The 'Reorder' button is visible at the bottom of the table.

Change Center

View changes and restarts

Pending changes exist. They must be activated to take effect.

Activate Changes

Undo All Changes

Domain Structure

APPNAMEDomain

- Environment
 - Servers
 - Clusters
 - Coherence Clusters
 - Machines
 - Virtual Hosts
 - Work Managers
 - Startup and Shutdown Classes
 - Deployments
 - Services
 - Security Realms
 - Interoperability
 - Diagnostics

How do I...

- Configure Authentication and Identity Assertion providers
- Configure the Password Validation provider
- Manage security providers
- Set the JAAS control flag
- Re-order Authentication providers

Settings for myrealm

Configuration Users and Groups Roles and Policies Credential Mappings **Providers** Migration

Authentication Password Validation Authorization Adjudication Role Mapping Auditing

Credential Mapping Certification Path Keystores

An Authentication provider allows WebLogic Server to establish trust by validating a user. You must have one Authentication provider in a security realm, and you can configure multiple Authentication providers in a security realm. Different types of Authentication providers are designed to access different data stores, such as LDAP servers or DBMS. You can also configure a Realm Adapter Authentication provider that allows you to work with users and groups from previous releases of WebLogic Server.

Customize this table

Authentication Providers

New Delete Reorder Showing 1 to 4 of 4 Previous Next

Name	Description	Version
Trust Service Identity Asserter	Trust Service Identity Assertion Provider	1.0
DefaultAuthenticator	WebLogic Authentication Provider	1.0
DefaultIdentityAsserter	WebLogic Identity Assertion provider	1.0
OIDAuthenticator	Provider that performs LDAP authentication	1.0

New Delete Reorder Showing 1 to 4 of 4 Previous Next

16. Click **Reorder**.

17. Move **OIDAuthenticator** to the top of the providers list

The screenshot shows the 'Reorder Authentication Providers' dialog box in the WebLogic Server Administration Console. The dialog box has 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the top. It contains a section titled 'Reorder Authentication Providers' with instructions: 'You can reorder your Authentication Providers using the list below. By reordering Authentication Providers, you can alter the authentication sequence.' Below this, it says 'Select authenticator(s) in the list and use arrows to move them up and down in the list.' The 'Authentication Providers' section shows a list of available providers: 'OIDAuthenticator' (checked), 'Trust Service Identity Asserter', 'DefaultAuthenticator', and 'DefaultIdentityAsserter'. Arrows are provided to move the providers up or down in the list. The 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom of the dialog box.

ORACLE WebLogic Server Administration Console 12c

Home Log Out Preferences Record Help

Welcome, weblogic Connected to: APPNAMEDomain

Home > apphost.us.oracle.com > Summary of Servers > Summary of Security Realms > myrealm > Providers > OIDAuthenticator > Providers > DefaultAuthenticator > OIDAuthenticator > Providers

Reorder Authentication Providers

OK Cancel

Reorder Authentication Providers

You can reorder your Authentication Providers using the list below. By reordering Authentication Providers, you can alter the authentication sequence.

Select authenticator(s) in the list and use arrows to move them up and down in the list.

Authentication Providers:

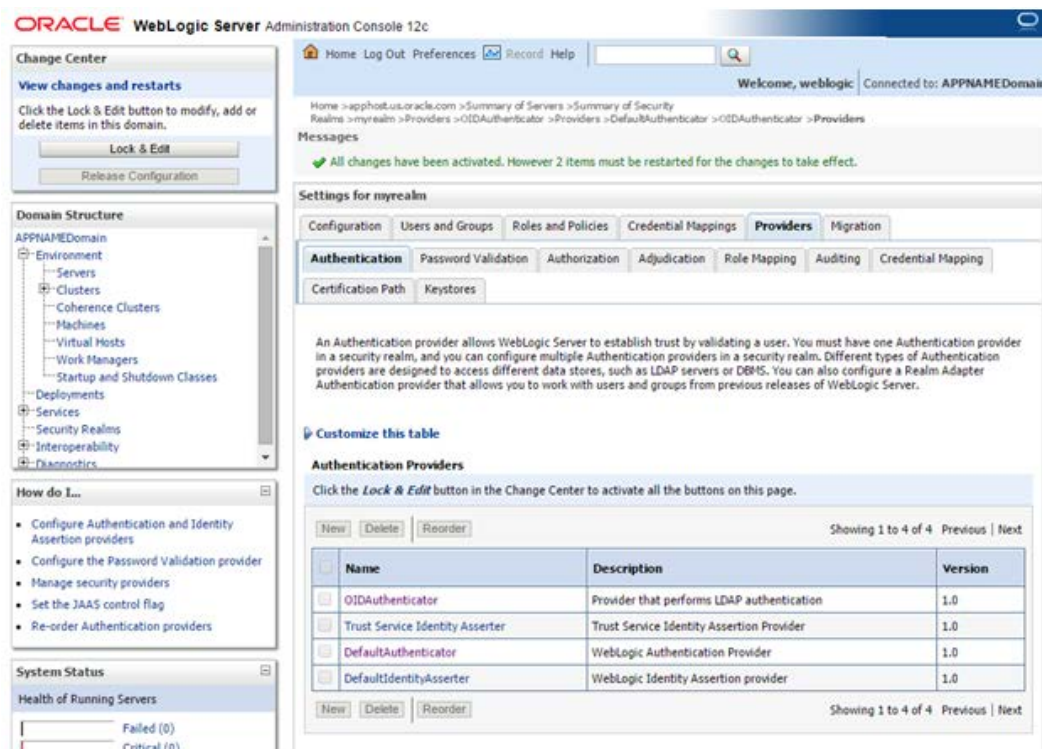
Available:

- ☒ **OIDAuthenticator**
- ☐ Trust Service Identity Asserter
- ☐ DefaultAuthenticator
- ☐ DefaultIdentityAsserter

OK Cancel

18. Click **OK**.

19. Once your changes are saved, click **Activate Changes**.



- Restart Weblogic Adminserver and Managed server.

Configure Oracle Single Sign-On

Note: This procedure is only needed if you plan on setting up the ReIM application using Single Sign On (SSO) authentication. This can be skipped if SSO is not going to be configured for this environment. The Oracle Access Manager must be configured and the Oracle http server (Webtier and webgate) must be registered into the Oracle Access Manager.

Create the SSO provider in the REIMDomain

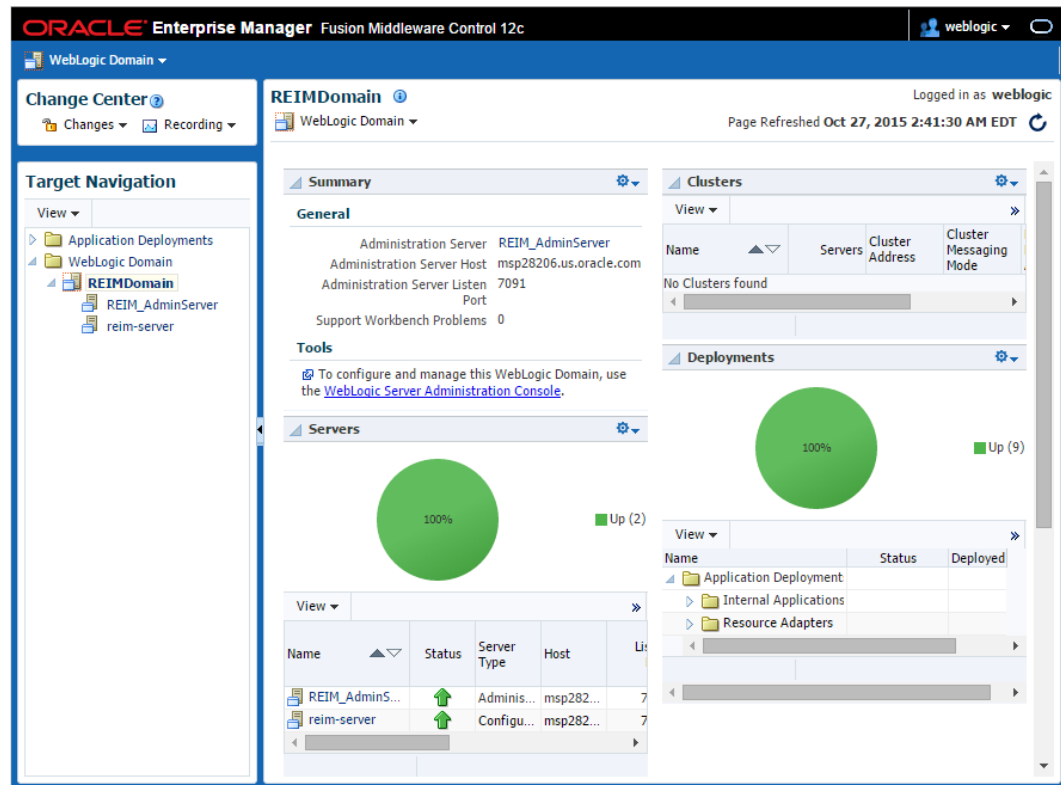
- Log into the WebLogic console
- Navigate to: security realms -> myrealm (default realm) -> providers.
- Start a Lock & Edit session.
- Click **New provider**.
- Set the provider name (Default: [OAMIdentityAsserter](#)).
- Click **Ok**.
- Open the new provider configuration.
- Under Common, set the Control Flag to SUFFICIENT.
- On the provider list, click **Reorder**.
- Move the [OAMIdentityAsserter](#) to the top of the list, or above the DefaultAuthenticator.
- Click **Ok**.

12. Click **Activate Changes**.
13. Shutdown the domain.
14. Start the admin and managed servers for the domain.

Create mds-CustomPortalDS Datasource using EM

Follow the below steps to create mds-CustomPortal datasource.

1. Login to EM console



2. Go to WebLogic Domain, Other Services and then MetaData Repositories

Oracle Enterprise Manager Fusion Middleware Control 12c

WebLogic Domain

Change Center

Target Navigation

REIMDomain

Other Services

Metadata Repositories

Deployments

100% Up (9)

Name	Status	Server Type	Host
REIM_AdminS...	Up	Adminis...	msp282...
reim-server	Up	Configu...	msp282...

Oracle Enterprise Manager Fusion Middleware Control 12c

WebLogic Domain

Change Center

Target Navigation

REIMDomain

Metadata Repositories

You create most Fusion Middleware component schema repositories in a database using the Repository Creation Utility. Metadata Services (MDS) repositories can be created in a database with the Repository Creation Utility or created on disk as file-based repositories. You must register an MDS repository before you can deploy application metadata to the repository.

Database-Based Repositories

Register... Deregister...

Repository Name	Database Type	Database Name	Schema
No Repository			

File-Based Repositories

Register... Deregister...

Repository Name	Directory
No Repository	

- Under Database-Based Repositories, click the **Register** button.

ORACLE Enterprise Manager Fusion Middleware Control 12c

WebLogic Domain

Change Center

Target Navigation

View

- Application Deployments
- WebLogic Domain
 - REIMDomain
 - REIM_AdminServer
 - reim-server

REIMDomain

WebLogic Domain

Logged in as weblogic

Page Refreshed Oct 27, 2015 3:33:04 AM EDT

Information

The changes made on this page do not participated in the configuration session. The changes will be activated and applied immediately. You cannot undo the changes from the Change Center.

Register Database-Based Metadata Repository

A repository stores information used by Application Server components and other applications. A metadata repository must be registered to be operational. A database-based repository is created using the Repository Creation Utility. To register, input database connection information and click Query, then select one of the Metadata Repository and click OK button.

OK Cancel

Database Connection Information

Database Type: ☒ Oracle ☐ SQL Server ☐ IBM DB2 ☐ MySQL

* User Name: weblogic

* Password: *****

Role: SYSDBA

* Host Name:

* Port:

* Service Name:

Query

Metadata Repository	Is Registered?	Schema Name	Version	Status	Mo
No Repository					

Selected Repository

The selected schema can be registered only if it has not already been registered.

Repository Name:

Schema Password:

- Remove weblogic user if it appears in the Username field. Provide the MDS Schema user created in RCU as part of RCU schemas creation.
Example: REIM_MDS
- Input the details of Database Hostname, Port number and Service name. Click **Query** and a list of all the schemas will be displayed.

ORACLE Enterprise Manager Fusion Middleware Control 12c

WebLogic Domain

Change Center

Target Navigation

View

- Application Deployments
- WebLogic Domain
 - REIMDomain
 - REIM_AdminServer
 - reim-server

REIMDomain

WebLogic Domain

Logged in as weblogic

Page Refreshed Oct 27, 2015 4:04:47 AM EDT

A repository stores information used by Application Server components and other applications. A metadata repository must be registered to be operational. A database-based repository is created using the Repository Creation Utility. To register, input database connection information and click Query, then select one of the Metadata Repository and click OK button.

OK Cancel

Database Connection Information

Database Type: ☒ Oracle ☐ SQL Server ☐ IBM DB2 ☐ MySQL

* User Name: REIM_MDS

* Password: *****

Role: NORMAL

* Host Name: msp52715.us.oracle.com

* Port: 1521

* Service Name: oolsp64fmw

Query

Metadata Repository	Is Registered?	Schema Name	Version	Status	Modified Time
MDS	false	ALLOCDOMAIN_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 14, 2015 11:34:15 PM EDT
MDS	false	REIMDOMAIN_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 14, 2015 11:43:33 PM EDT
MDS	false	RESADOMAIN_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 14, 2015 11:52:53 PM EDT
MDS	false	RPMDOMAIN_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 15, 2015 12:02:19 AM EDT
MDS	false	RWMDOMAIN_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 15, 2015 12:12:40 AM EDT
MDS	false	SIMDOMAIN_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 15, 2015 12:21:56 AM EDT
MDS	false	RTGDOMAIN_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 15, 2015 12:44:21 AM EDT
MDS	false	RIBDOMAIN_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 15, 2015 1:27:30 AM EDT
MDS	false	RSBDOMAIN_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 15, 2015 2:13:56 AM EDT
MDS	false	RA_MDS	11.1.1.9.0	VALID	Jul 15, 2015 2:53:14 AM EDT
MDS	false	OI_MDS	11.1.1.9.0	VALID	Jul 15, 2015 3:20:10 AM EDT
MDS	false	ALLOC_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 29, 2015 6:24:35 AM EDT
MDS	false	APPNAME_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Sep 28, 2015 7:42:24 AM EDT
MDS	false	REIM_MDS	11.1.1.9.0	VALID	Oct 27, 2015 4:12:43 AM EDT

6. Select the <REIM_MDS> schema and enter the repository name 'CustomPortalDS' and password and click the OK button.

Oracle Enterprise Manager Fusion Middleware Control 12c

WebLogic Domain

Change Center

Target Navigation

View

- Application Deployments
 - WebLogic Domain
 - REIMDomain
 - REIM_AdminServer
 - reim-server

REIMDomain

Port: 1521

Service Name: oolsp64fmw

Role: NORMAL

Metadata Repository	Is Registered?	Schema Name	Version	Status	Modified Time
MDS	false	ALLOCDOMAIN_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 14, 2015 11:34:15 PM EDT
MDS	false	REIMDOMAIN_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 14, 2015 11:43:33 PM EDT
MDS	false	RESADOMAIN_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 14, 2015 11:52:53 PM EDT
MDS	false	RPHDOMAIN_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 15, 2015 12:02:19 AM EDT
MDS	false	RWMSDOMAIN_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 15, 2015 12:12:40 AM EDT
MDS	false	SIMDOMAIN_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 15, 2015 12:21:56 AM EDT
MDS	false	RTGDOMAIN_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 15, 2015 12:44:21 AM EDT
MDS	false	RIBDOMAIN_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 15, 2015 1:27:30 AM EDT
MDS	false	RSBDOMAIN_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 15, 2015 2:13:56 AM EDT
MDS	false	RA_MDS	11.1.1.9.0	VALID	Jul 15, 2015 2:53:14 AM EDT
MDS	false	OI_MDS	11.1.1.9.0	VALID	Jul 15, 2015 3:20:10 AM EDT
MDS	false	ALLOC_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Jul 29, 2015 6:24:35 AM EDT
MDS	false	APPNAME_MDS	12.1.3.0.0	VALID	Sep 28, 2015 7:42:24 AM EDT
MDS	false	REIM_MDS	11.1.1.9.0	VALID	Oct 27, 2015 4:12:43 AM EDT

Selected Repository - Schema: REIM_MDS

The selected schema can be registered only if it has not already been registered.

Repository Name: CustomPortalDS

Schema Password: *****

7. The MDS Repository will appear. Click on mds-CustomPortalDS.

Oracle Enterprise Manager Fusion Middleware Control 12c

WebLogic Domain

Change Center

Target Navigation

View

- Application Deployments
 - WebLogic Domain
 - REIMDomain
 - REIM_AdminServer
 - reim-server

REIMDomain

Information

Metadata Repository mds-CustomPortalDS has been successfully registered. If it is not visible in the table after refresh the page, it maybe because Admin Server need to be restarted. Restart Admin Server to see the newly registered Repository.

Metadata Repositories

You create most Fusion Middleware component schema repositories in a database using the Repository Creation Utility. Metadata Services (MDS) repositories can be created in a database with the Repository Creation Utility or created on disk as file-based repositories. You must register an MDS repository before you can deploy application metadata to the repository.

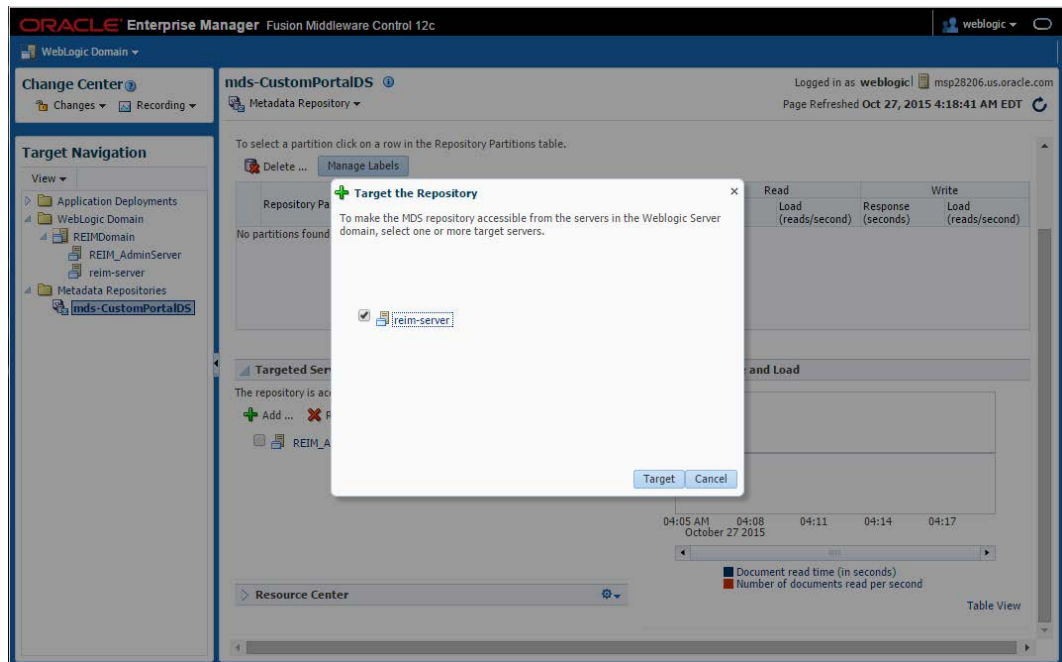
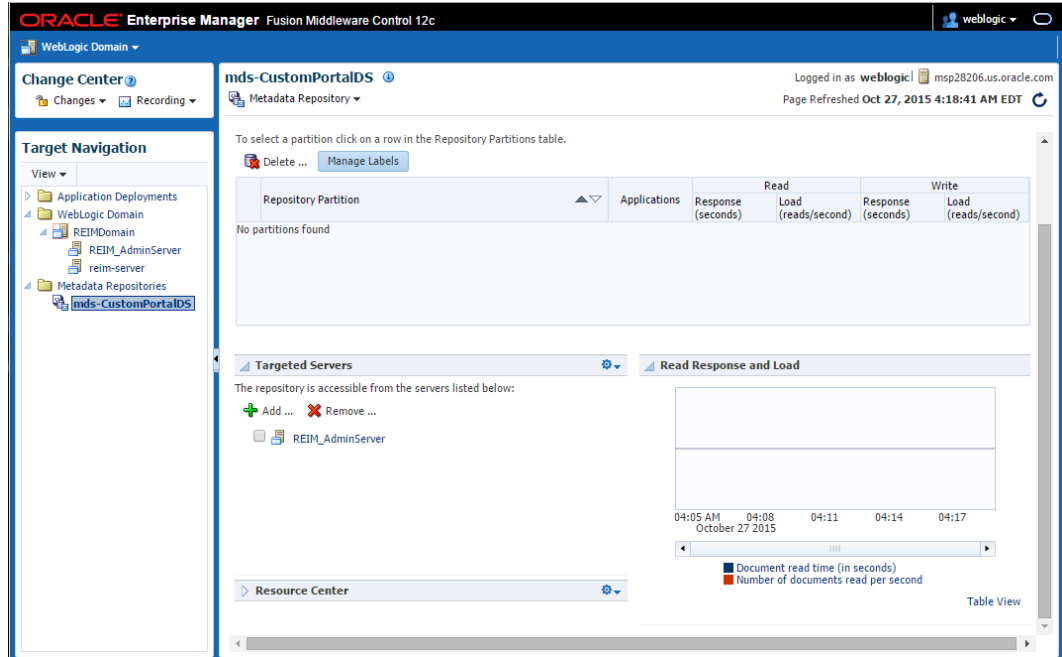
Database-Based Repositories

Repository Name	Database Type	Database Name	Schema Name	JNDI Location
mds-CustomPortalDS	Oracle	oolsp64fmw	REIM_MDS	jdbc/mds/C

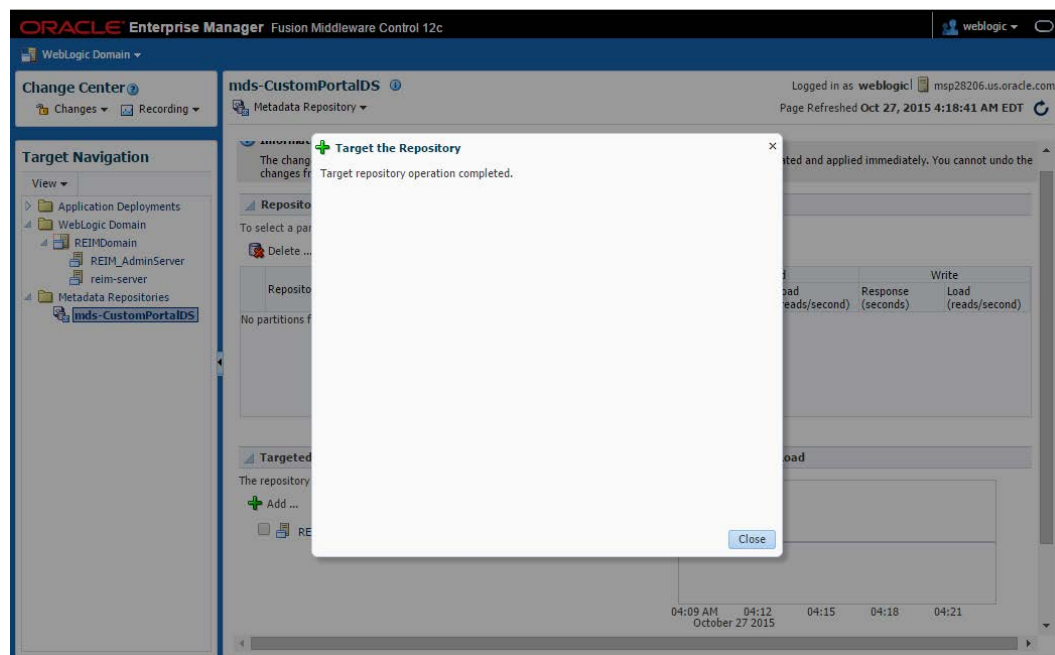
File-Based Repositories

Repository Name	Directory
No Repository	

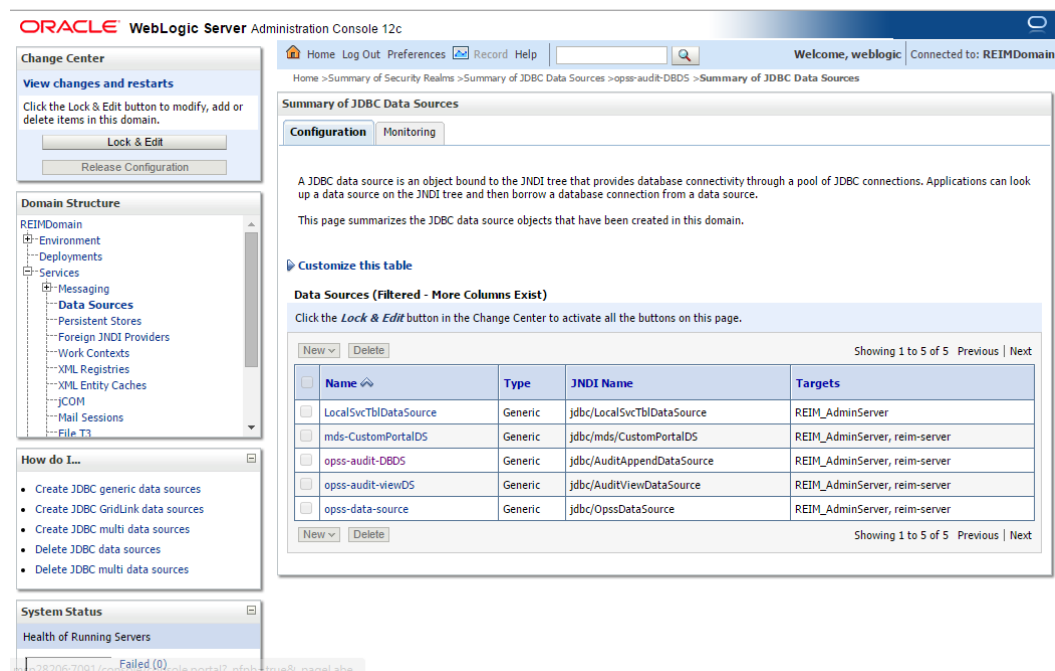
8. Under Targeted Servers, Click add and add the managed server 'reim-server'. Click Target.



- A message 'Target repository operation completed' is displayed. Click **Close**.



- Restart the Admin server and the Managed server. Login to the Admin console URL and verify mds-CustomPortalDS datasource exists.

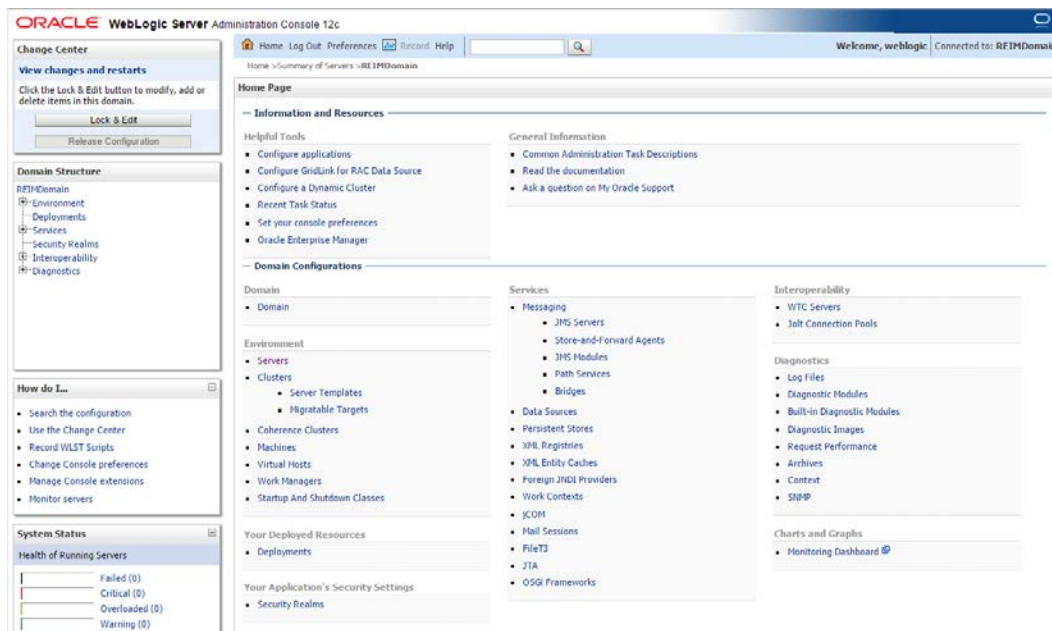


Deployment of jax-rs-2.0 library in WebLogic

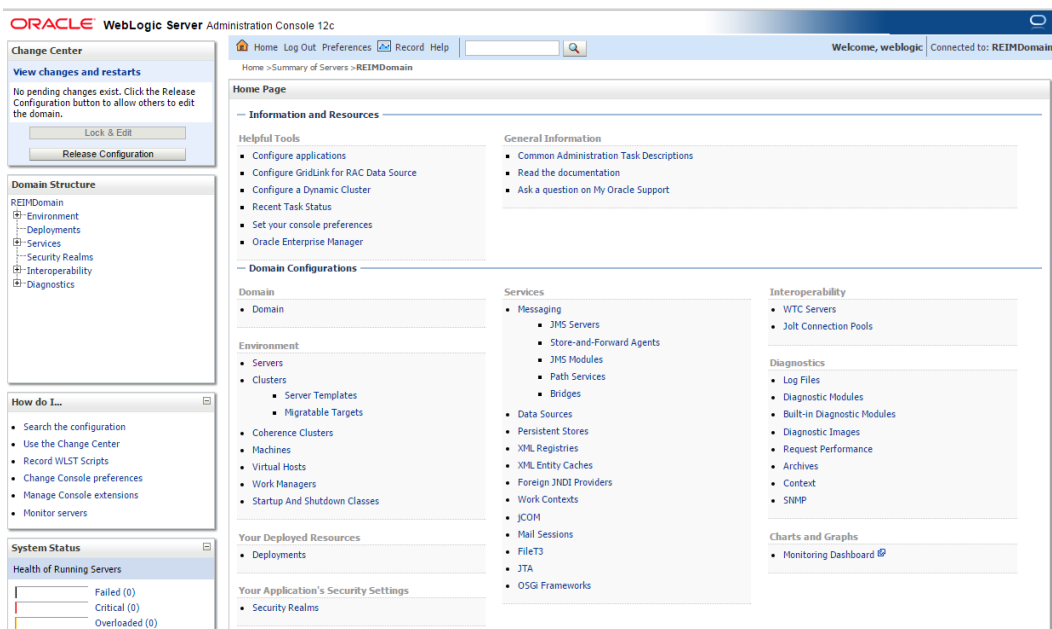
The library jax-rs-2.0.war needs to be deployed in WebLogic prior to ReIM Application install. This library is available at `/u00/webadmin/products/wls_retail/wlserver/common/deployable-libraries/jax-rs-2.0.war`.

Perform the following procedure to deploy the jax-rs-2.0 library:

1. Login to the WebLogic Admin Console.



2. Click Lock & Edit.



3. Click Deployments.

ORACLE WebLogic Server Administration Console 12c

Home Log Out Preferences Record Help

Welcome, weblogic Connected to: REIMDomain

Home > Summary of Servers > REIMDomain > Summary of Deployments

Summary of Deployments

Control Monitoring

This page displays a list of Java EE applications and stand-alone application modules that have been installed to this domain. Installed applications and modules can be started, stopped, updated (redeployed), or deleted from the domain by first selecting the application name and using the controls on this page.

To install a new application or module for deployment to targets in this domain, click the Install button.

Customize this table

Deployments

Install Update Delete Start Stop

Showing 1 to 10 of 51 Previous Next

Name	State	Health	Type	Targets	Deployment Order
pdf.oracle.businesseditor(1.0,12.1.3.0.0)	Active		Library	REIM_AdminServer, reim-server	100
pdf.oracle.domain(1.0,12.1.3.0.0)	Active		Library	REIM_AdminServer, reim-server	100
pdf.oracle.domain.webapp(1.0,12.1.3.0.0)	Active		Library	REIM_AdminServer, reim-server	100
coherence-transaction-rar	Active	OK	Resource Adapter	REIM_AdminServer, reim-server	100
DMS Application (12.1.3.0.0)	Active	OK	Web Application	REIM_AdminServer, reim-server	5
em	Active	OK	Enterprise Application	REIM_AdminServer	400
emagentsdkimplpriv_jar(11.2.0.1.0,12.1.0.3.0)	Active		Library	REIM_AdminServer	100
emagentsdkimpl_jar(11.2.0.1.0,12.1.0.3.0)	Active		Library	REIM_AdminServer	100
emagentsdk_jar(11.2.1.0.3.0)	Active		Library	REIM_AdminServer	100
emas	Active		Library	REIM_AdminServer	100

Install Update Delete Start Stop

Showing 1 to 10 of 51 Previous Next

4. Click Install.

ORACLE WebLogic Server Administration Console 12c

Home Log Out Preferences Record Help

Welcome, weblogic Connected to: REIMDomain

Home > Summary of Servers > REIMDomain > Summary of Deployments

Install Application Assistant

Back Next Finish Cancel

Locate deployment to install and prepare for deployment

Select the file path that represents the application root directory, archive file, exploded archive directory, or application module descriptor that you want to install. You can also enter the path of the application directory or file in the Path field.

Note: Only valid file paths are displayed below. If you cannot find your deployment files, upload your file(s) and/or confirm that your application contains the required deployment descriptors.

Path: /u00/webadmin/config/domains/wls_retail/REIMDomain

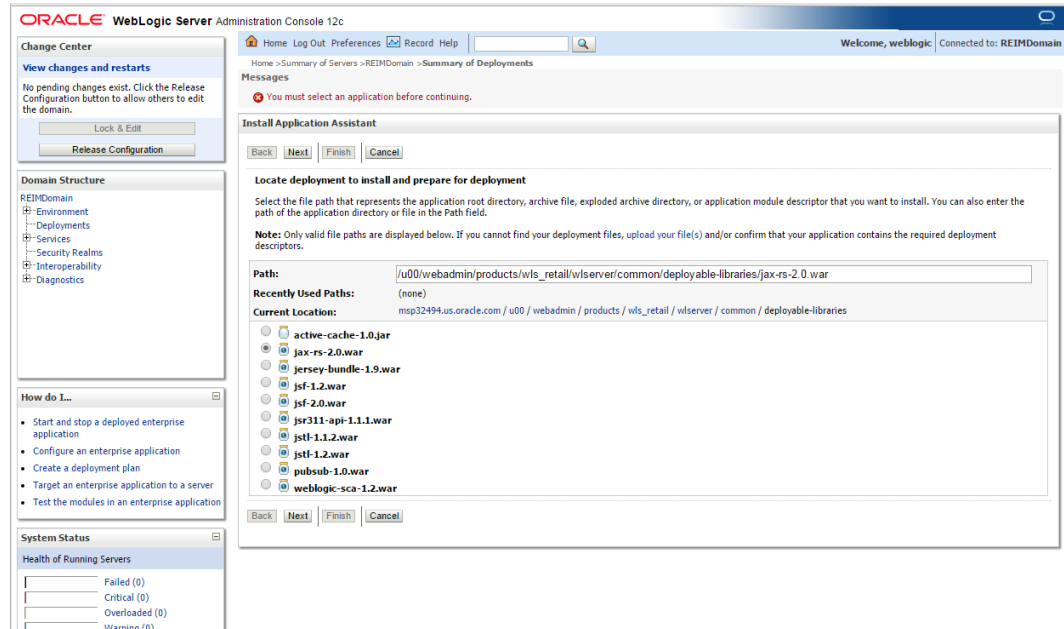
Recently Used Paths: (none)

Current Locations: msp52494.us.oracle.com / u00 / webadmin / config / domains / wls_retail / REIMDomain

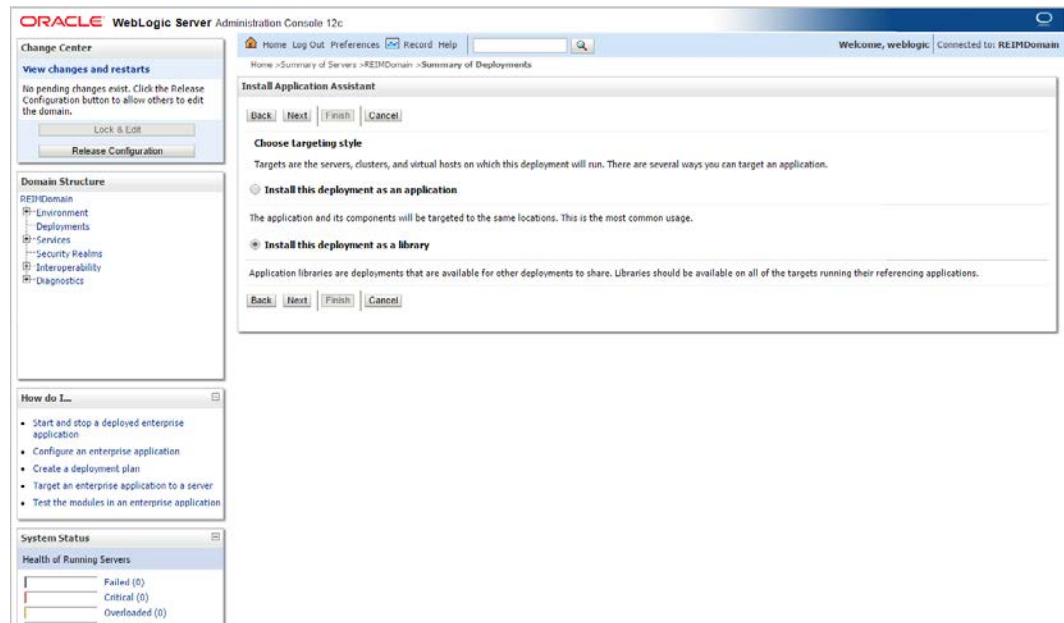
- bin
- common
- config
- logs
- nodemanager
- servers
- system

Back Next Finish Cancel

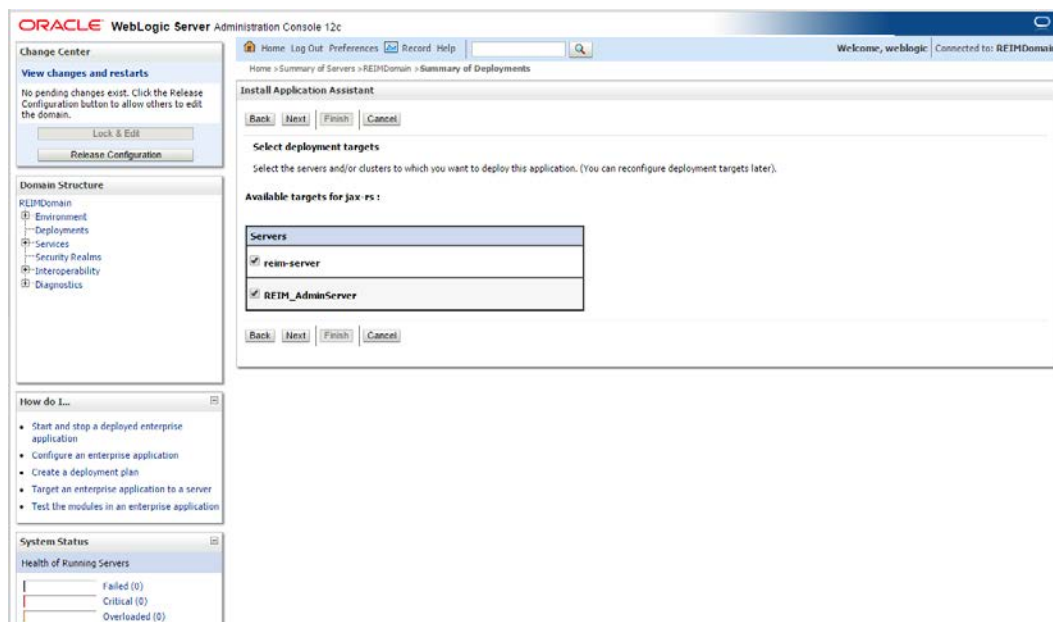
5. Select the library from the path
/u00/webadmin/products/wls_retail/wlserver/common/deployable-libraries/jax-rs-2.0.war on the server. Click **Next**.



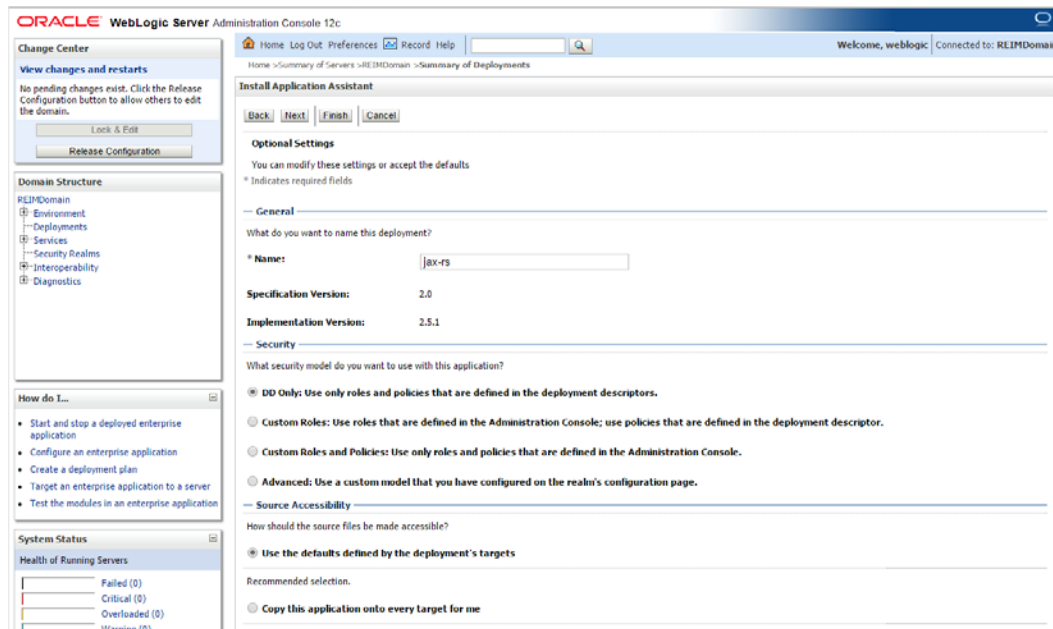
6. Select 'Install the deployment as a library'. Click **Next**.



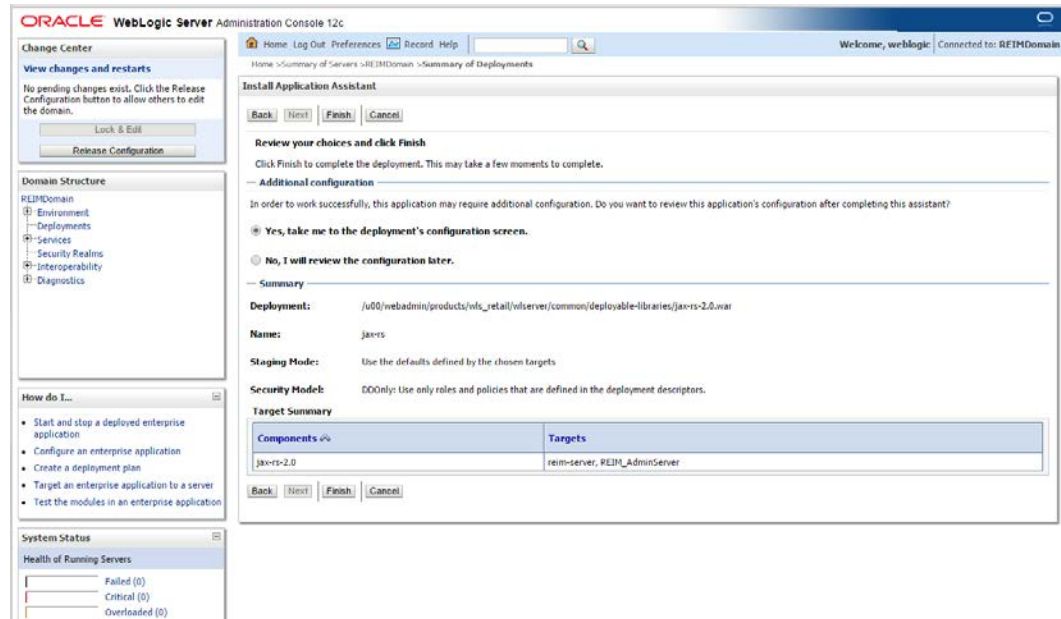
7. Target to both Admin server (for example: REIM_AdminServer) and Managed server (for example: reim-server). Click **Next**.



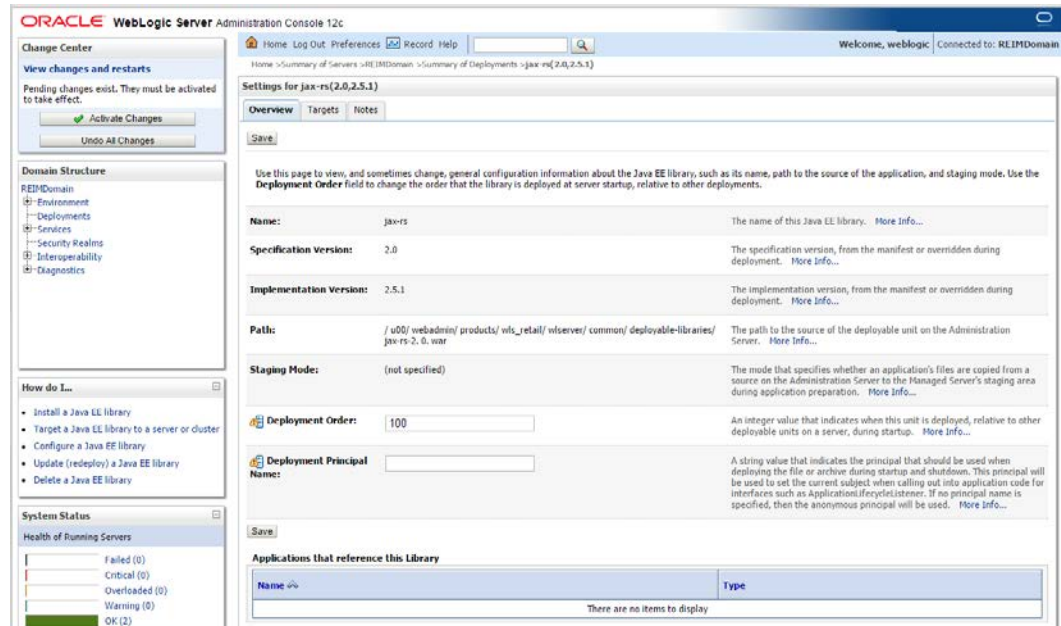
8. Select defaults for the Name=jax-rs. Click **Next**.



9. Select Defaults and click **Finish**.



10. Click **Activate Changes**.



11. The following screen is displayed.

The screenshot shows the Oracle WebLogic Server Administration Console. The left sidebar contains the 'Change Center' with a 'View changes and restarts' link, a 'Domain Structure' tree with 'REIMDomain' expanded, and a 'System Status' section showing 'Health of Running Servers' with a green bar indicating 'OK (2)'. The main content area is titled 'Settings for jax-rs(2.0,2.5.1)' and includes a 'Messages' section with a green checkmark stating 'All changes have been activated. No restarts are necessary.' Below this is a 'Save' button and a description of the page's purpose. The 'Settings' section includes fields for 'Name' (jax-rs), 'Specification Version' (2.0), 'Implementation Version' (2.5.1), 'Path' (/u00/webadmin/products/vls_retail/wlserver/common/deployable-libraries/jax-rs-2.0.war), 'Staging Mode' (not specified), 'Deployment Order' (100), and 'Deployment Principal Name'. At the bottom, there is a table titled 'Applications that reference this Library'.

12. Verify the jax-rs library is shown in the Deployments.

The screenshot shows the Oracle WebLogic Server Administration Console. The left sidebar is similar to the previous screenshot. The main content area is titled 'Summary of Deployments' and includes a 'Control' tab. Below this is a description of the page's purpose and a link to 'Customize this table'. The 'Deployments' section contains a table with columns: Name, State, Health, Type, Targets, and Deployment Order. The table lists various deployed applications, including 'em_sdkcore_public_pojo_jar', 'jax-rs(2.0,2.5.1)', and several JSP files. The 'jax-rs(2.0,2.5.1)' entry is highlighted, showing it is in the 'Active' state and deployed to 'REIM_AdminServer' and 'reim-server'.

Name	State	Health	Type	Targets	Deployment Order
em_sdkcore_public_pojo_jar	Active		Library	REIM_AdminServer	100
jax-rs(2.0,2.5.1)	Active		Library	REIM_AdminServer, reim-server	100
jsp(2.1,2.1.7-01-)	Active		Library	REIM_AdminServer, reim-server	100
jstl(1.2,1.2.0.1)	Active		Library	REIM_AdminServer, reim-server	100
log4j(1.3,1.2.15)	Active		Library	REIM_AdminServer	100
odl.clickhistory(1.0,12.1.3)	Active		Library	REIM_AdminServer, reim-server	100
odl.clickhistory.webapp(1.0,12.1.3)	Active		Library	REIM_AdminServer, reim-server	100
ohw-rcf(5,12.1.3.0.0)	Active		Library	REIM_AdminServer, reim-server	100
ohw-ux(5,12.1.3.0.0)	Active		Library	REIM_AdminServer, reim-server	100
oracle.adf.configbeans(1.0,12.1.3.0.0)	Active		Library	REIM_AdminServer, reim-server	100

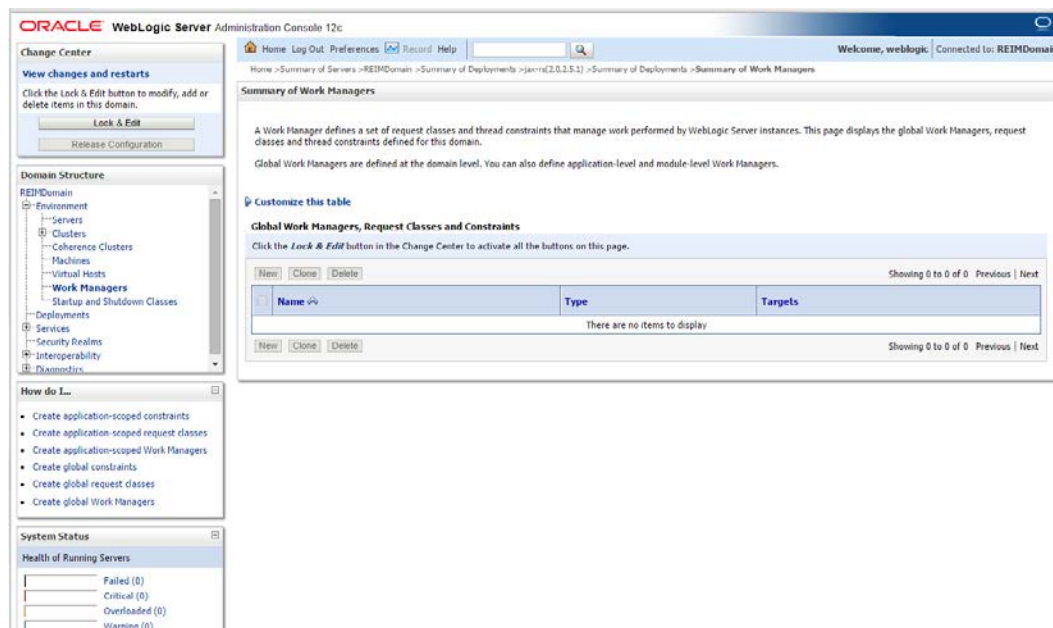
Steps to Configure WebLogic Work Manager

For the Invoice Matching Batch programs to use independent work managers for the thread processing, we need to create a work manager for each batch program. The names of the work managers need to be exactly the same as the ones mentioned in the table below. In case a named work manager is not created, the default work manager will be used by the server.

Batch Name	Work Manager
Automatch	AutoMatchWM
Edi Injector	EdiInjectorWM
Credit note automatch	CNAutoMatchWM
Complex deal upload	CDUploadWM
Fixed deal upload	FDUploadWM
Financial Posting	PostingWM

Steps to Create a Named Work Manager

1. From WebLogic Console navigate to Work Manager pane (Domain->Environment->Work Manager)



2. Click Lock & Edit.

The screenshot shows the Oracle WebLogic Server Administration Console. The left sidebar contains the Domain Structure tree with 'Work Managers' selected under 'Virtual Hosts'. The main content area displays the 'Summary of Work Managers' page. It includes a 'Lock & Edit' button in the Change Center and a table for 'Global Work Managers, Request Classes and Constraints'. The table is currently empty, showing 'Showing 0 to 0 of 0' items.

Change Center
View changes and restarts
No pending changes exist. Click the Release Configuration button to allow others to edit the domain.
Lock & Edit
Release Configuration

Domain Structure
REIMDomain
└ Environment
└ Servers
└ Clusters
└ Coherence Clusters
└ Machines
└ Virtual Hosts
└ **Work Managers**
└ Startup and Shutdown Classes
└ Deployments
└ Services
└ Security Realms
└ Interoperability
└ Diagnostics

How do I...?

- Create application-scoped constraints
- Create application-scoped request classes
- Create application-scoped Work Managers
- Create global constraints
- Create global request classes
- Create global Work Managers

System Status
Health of Running Servers

- Failed (0)
- Critical (0)
- Overloaded (0)

Summary of Work Managers
A Work Manager defines a set of request classes and thread constraints that manage work performed by WebLogic Server instances. This page displays the global Work Managers, request classes and thread constraints defined for this domain.
Global Work Managers are defined at the domain level. You can also define application-level and module-level Work Managers.

Customize this table
Global Work Managers, Request Classes and Constraints
New Clone Delete Showing 0 to 0 of 0 Previous Next

Name	Type	Targets
There are no items to display		

New Clone Delete Showing 0 to 0 of 0 Previous Next

3. Click New. This will take us to the screen which allows us to create work managers and other related classes like constraints. Click Next.

The screenshot shows the 'Create a New Work Manager Component' dialog box. It has a 'Back', 'Next', 'Finish', and 'Cancel' button bar at the top. The 'Select Work Manager Definition type' section is active, showing a list of options: 'Work Manager' (selected), 'Response Time Request Class', 'Fair Share Request Class', 'Context Request Class', 'Maximum Threads Constraint', 'Minimum Threads Constraint', and 'Capacity Constraint'. The 'Next' button is highlighted.

Oracle WebLogic Server Administration Console 12c
Home Log Out Preferences Record Help
Welcome, weblogic Connected to: REIMDomain

Change Center
View changes and restarts
No pending changes exist. Click the Release Configuration button to allow others to edit the domain.
Lock & Edit
Release Configuration

Domain Structure
REIMDomain
└ Environment
└ Servers
└ Clusters
└ Coherence Clusters
└ Machines
└ Virtual Hosts
└ **Work Managers**
└ Startup and Shutdown Classes
└ Deployments
└ Services
└ Security Realms
└ Interoperability
└ Diagnostics

How do I...?

- Create application-scoped constraints
- Create application-scoped request classes
- Create application-scoped Work Managers
- Create global constraints
- Create global request classes
- Create global Work Managers

System Status
Health of Running Servers

- Failed (0)
- Critical (0)
- Overloaded (0)

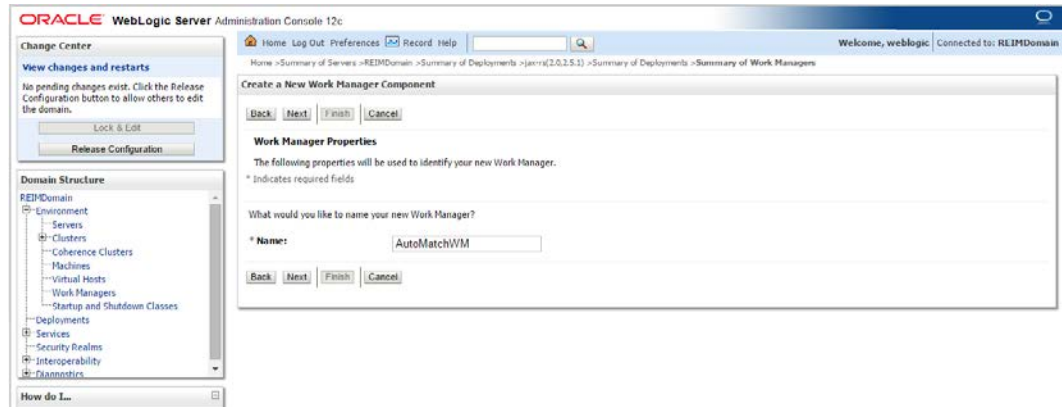
Create a New Work Manager Component
Back Next Finish Cancel

Select Work Manager Definition type
What type of Work Manager, Request Class or Constraint do you want to create?

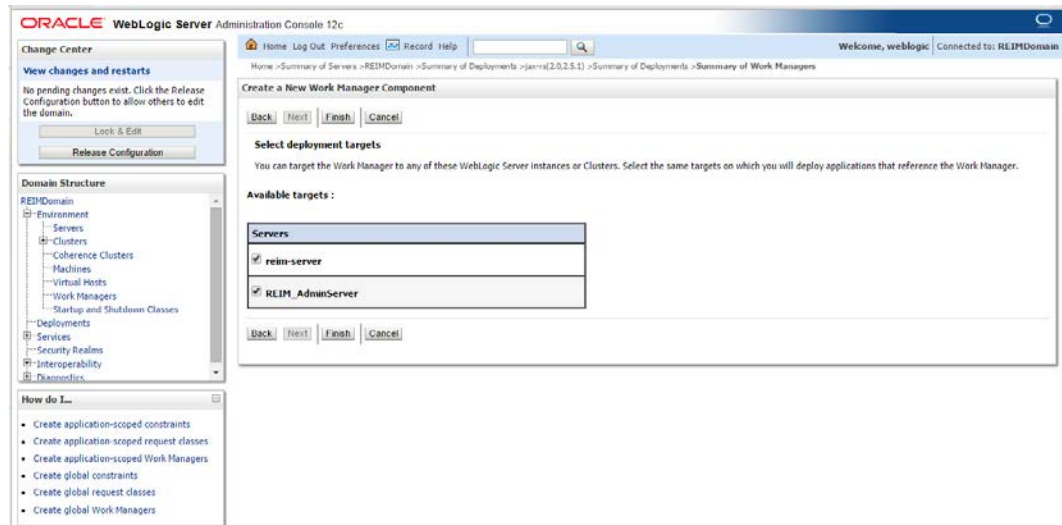
- ☒ **Work Manager**
- ☐ Response Time Request Class
- ☐ Fair Share Request Class
- ☐ Context Request Class
- ☐ Maximum Threads Constraint
- ☐ Minimum Threads Constraint
- ☐ Capacity Constraint

Back Next Finish Cancel

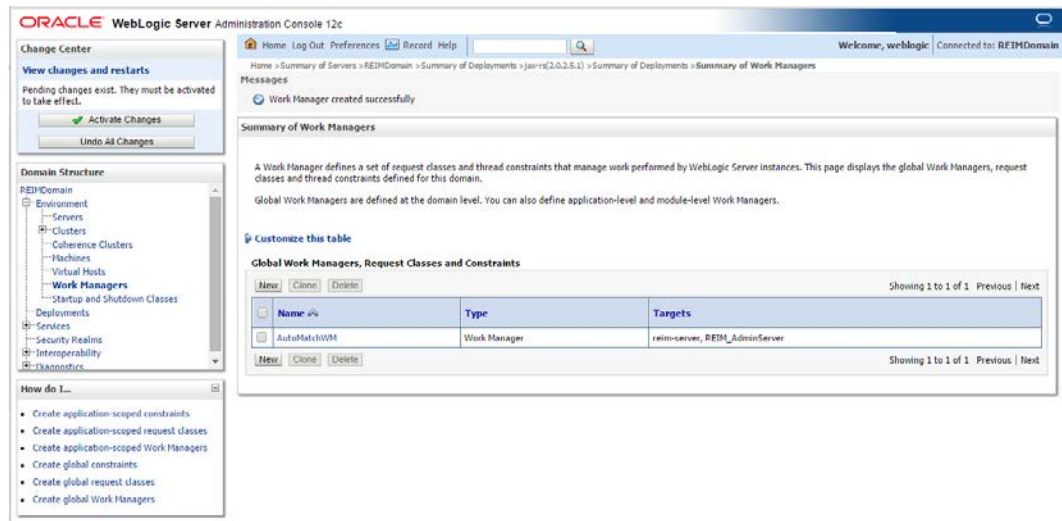
4. Provide the name of the work manager as mentioned in the table above. Example: AutoMatchWM



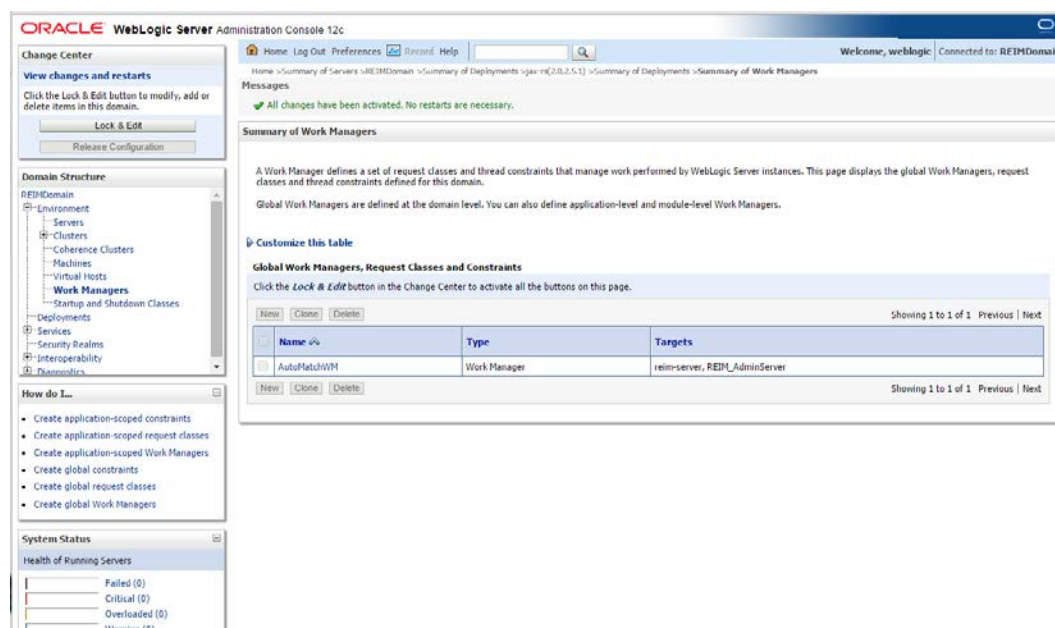
5. Target it to both Admin Server and the managed server (<Example>: REIM_AdminServer and reim-server).



6. Click Finish.



7. Click Activate Changes.

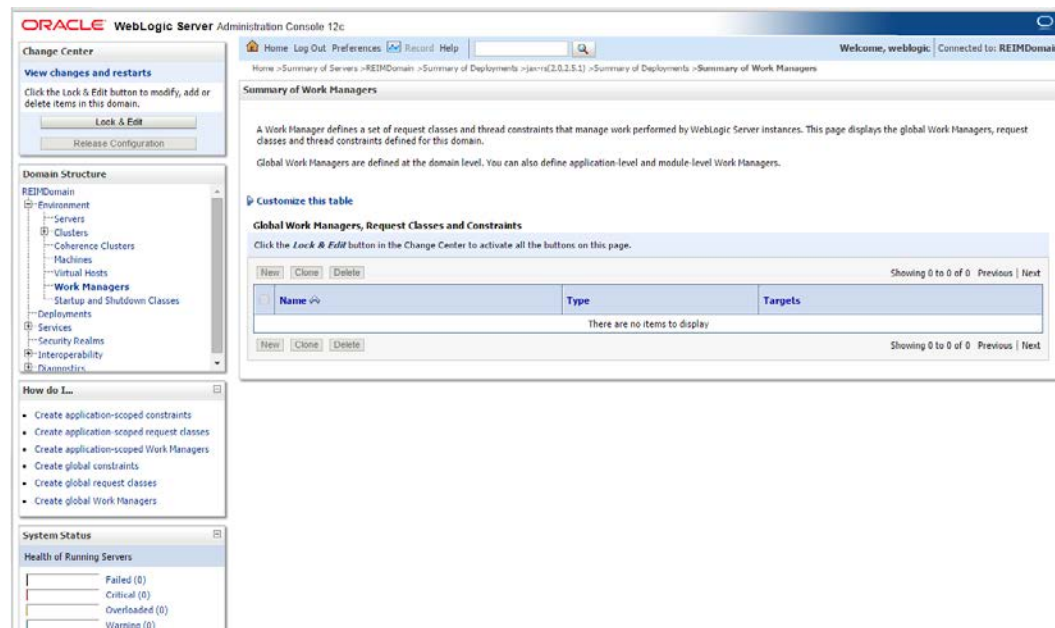


You can see the named work managers created in the list.

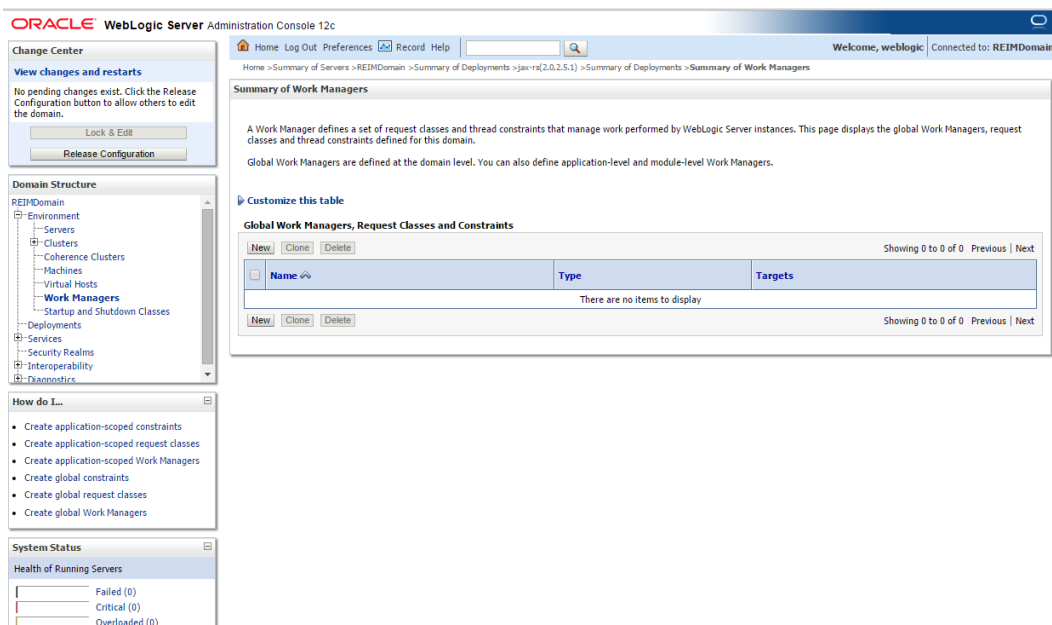
Steps to Create Maximum thread constraints

Maximum thread constraints can be assigned to work managers. Steps to create constraints and to assign them to work managers are as below:

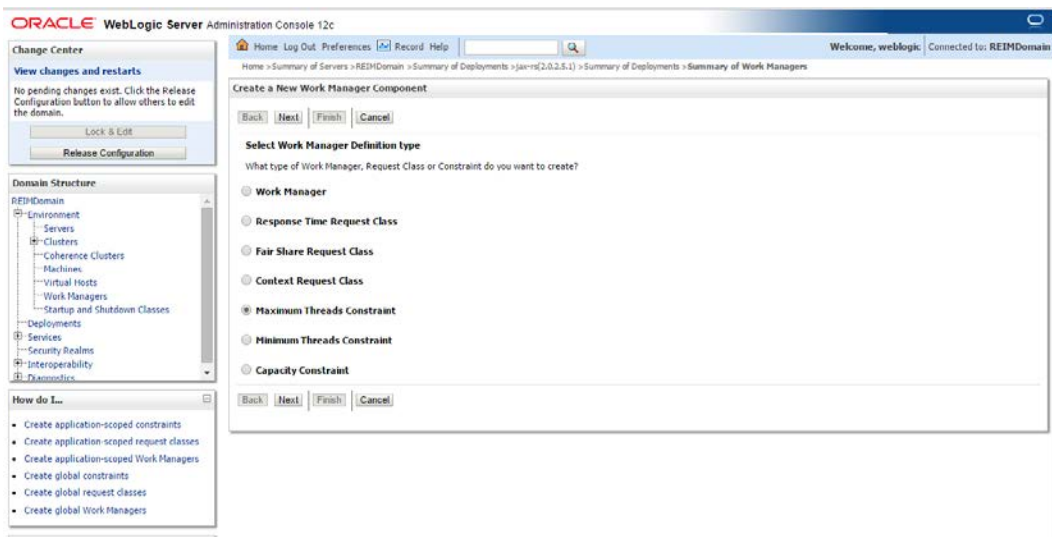
1. From WebLogic Console navigate to Work Manager pane (Domain->Environment->Work Manager)



2. Click Lock & Edit.



3. Click New. This will take us to the screen which allows us to create constraints.



4. Select the Maximum Thread Constraint radio button and click **Next**.
5. Give a Name (MaxThreads) and specify maximum number of consumers needed for your Application. Click **Next**.

ORACLE WebLogic Server Administration Console 12c

Home Log Out Preferences Record Help

Welcome, weblogic Connected to: REIMDomain

Home > Summary of Work Managers > Summary of Deployments > Summary of Work Managers

Create a New Work Manager Component

Back Next Finish Cancel

Maximum Threads Constraint Properties

The following properties will be used to identify your new Max Threads Request Class.
* Indicates required fields

What would you like to name the new Maximum Threads Constraint?

* Name:

What is the maximum number of concurrent threads to allocate for requests? Enter either a fixed thread count or the name of a Data Source whose size will be used for the constraint.

Count:

Data Source:

Back Next Finish Cancel

Change Center
View changes and restarts
No pending changes exist. Click the Release Configuration button to allow others to edit the domain.
Lock & Edit
Release Configuration

Domain Structure
REIMDomain
Environment
Servers
Clusters
Coherence Clusters
Machines
Virtual Hosts
Work Managers
Startup and Shutdown Classes
Deployments
Services
Security Realms
Interoperability
MBeans

How do I...
Create application-scoped constraints
Create application-scoped request classes
Create application-scoped Work Managers
Create global constraints
Create global request classes
Create global Work Managers

System Status
Health of Running Servers
Failed (0)
Critical (0)
Overloaded (0)

6. Select Target as <reim-server> and click **Finish**.

ORACLE WebLogic Server Administration Console 12c

Home Log Out Preferences Record Help

Welcome, weblogic Connected to: REIMDomain

Home > Summary of Work Managers > Summary of Deployments > Summary of Work Managers

Create a New Work Manager Component

Back Next Finish Cancel

Select deployment targets

You can target the Work Manager to any of these WebLogic Server instances or Clusters. Select the same targets on which you will deploy applications that reference the Work Manager.

Available targets :

Servers
☒ reim-server
☐ REIM_AdminServer

Back Next Finish Cancel

Change Center
View changes and restarts
No pending changes exist. Click the Release Configuration button to allow others to edit the domain.
Lock & Edit
Release Configuration

Domain Structure
REIMDomain
Environment
Servers
Clusters
Coherence Clusters
Machines
Virtual Hosts
Work Managers
Startup and Shutdown Classes
Deployments
Services
Security Realms
Interoperability
MBeans

How do I...
Create application-scoped constraints
Create application-scoped request classes
Create application-scoped Work Managers
Create global constraints
Create global request classes
Create global Work Managers

System Status
Health of Running Servers
Failed (0)
Critical (0)
Overloaded (0)

7. Click Activate Changes.

The screenshot shows the Oracle WebLogic Server Administration Console. In the left-hand 'Change Center' panel, under 'View changes and restarts', the 'Activate Changes' button is highlighted. The main area displays a 'Summary of Work Managers' page with a table of global work managers.

Global Work Managers, Request Classes and Constraints

Name	Type	Targets
AutoMatchWM	Work Manager	reim-server, REIM_AdminServer
MaxThreads	Maximum Threads Constraint	reim-server

8. Summary of the work managers will be displayed.

The screenshot shows the Oracle WebLogic Server Administration Console after the changes have been activated. The 'Change Center' panel now shows 'Lock & Edit' and 'Release Configuration' buttons. The main area displays the 'Summary of Work Managers' page, which includes a table of global work managers.

Global Work Managers, Request Classes and Constraints

Name	Type	Targets
AutoMatchWM	Work Manager	reim-server, REIM_AdminServer
MaxThreads	Maximum Threads Constraint	reim-server

Below the table, there is a 'System Status' section showing the 'Health of Running Servers' with a bar chart indicating the status of various servers.

9. Click the work manager link from the Summary of work managers. Example: AutoBatchWM

ORACLE WebLogic Server Administration Console 12c

Home > Summary of Work Managers > Summary of Deployments > Summary of Work Managers > AutoMatchWM

Welcome, weblogic | Connected to: REIMDomain

Settings for AutoMatchWM

Configuration Targets Notes

Click the **Lock & Edit** button in the Change Center to modify the settings on this page.

Save

Use this page to define the request classes and constraints for the selected global Work Manager.

Name:	(No value specified)	The user-specified name of this MBean instance. More Info...
Request Class:	(None configured) New	A request class associated with this Work Manager. This may be a FairShareRequestClass, ResponseTimeRequestClass, or a ContextRequestClass. More Info...
Minimum Threads Constraint:	(None configured) New	The minimum number of threads allocated to resolve deadlocks. More Info...
Maximum Threads Constraint:	(None configured) New	The maximum number of concurrent threads that can be allocated to execute requests. More Info...
Capacity Constraint:	(None configured) New	The total number of requests that can be queued or executing before WebLogic Server begins rejecting requests. More Info...
Stuck Thread Action:	Use server default behavior	Specify how stuck threads should be detected, and what action to take should they occur. More Info...
Max Stuck Thread Time:	0	Time after which an executing thread is declared as stuck. More Info...
Stuck Thread Count:	0	Number of stuck threads after which the WorkManager is shutdown. More Info...
☒ Resume When Unstuck		Whether to resume work manager once the stuck threads were cleared. More Info...

Save

Click the **Lock & Edit** button in the Change Center to modify the settings on this page.

10. Click **Lock & Edit**.

11. From the **Maximum Thread Constraint** dropdown, select the constraint you have created earlier.

ORACLE WebLogic Server Administration Console 12c

Home > Summary of Work Managers > Summary of Deployments > Summary of Work Managers > AutoMatchWM

Welcome, weblogic | Connected to: REIMDomain

Settings for AutoMatchWM

Configuration Targets Notes

Save

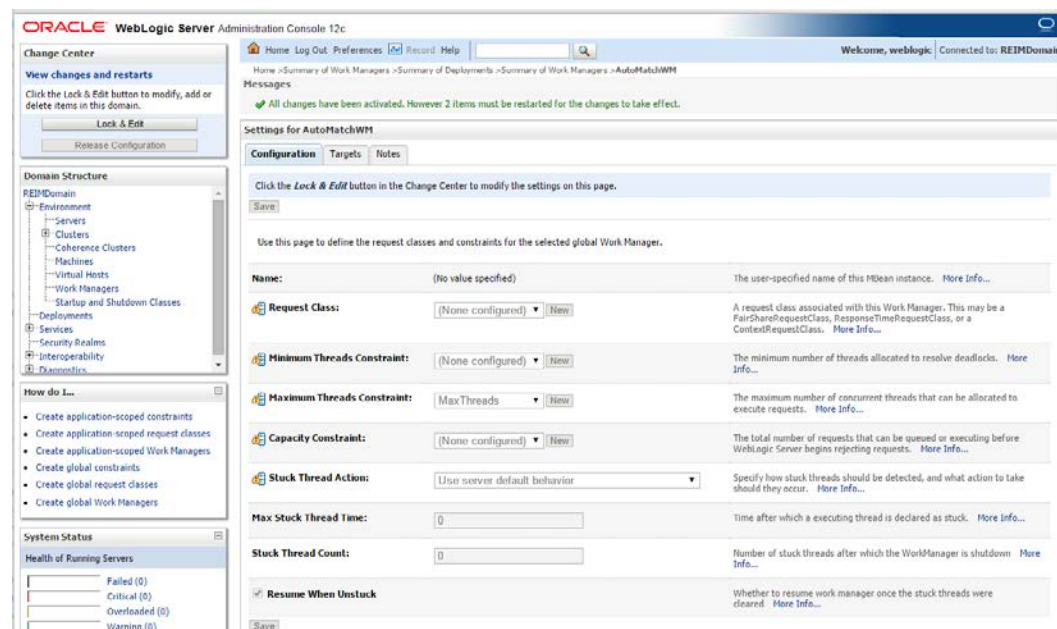
Use this page to define the request classes and constraints for the selected global Work Manager.

Name:	(No value specified)	The user-specified name of this MBean instance. More Info...
Request Class:	(None configured) New	A request class associated with this Work Manager. This may be a FairShareRequestClass, ResponseTimeRequestClass, or a ContextRequestClass. More Info...
Minimum Threads Constraint:	(None configured) New	The minimum number of threads allocated to resolve deadlocks. More Info...
Maximum Threads Constraint:	MaxThreads New	The maximum number of concurrent threads that can be allocated to execute requests. More Info...
Capacity Constraint:	(None configured) New	The total number of requests that can be queued or executing before WebLogic Server begins rejecting requests. More Info...
Stuck Thread Action:	Use server default behavior	Specify how stuck threads should be detected, and what action to take should they occur. More Info...
Max Stuck Thread Time:	0	Time after which an executing thread is declared as stuck. More Info...
Stuck Thread Count:	0	Number of stuck threads after which the WorkManager is shutdown. More Info...
☒ Resume When Unstuck		Whether to resume work manager once the stuck threads were cleared. More Info...

Save

12. Click **Save**.

13. Click **Activate Changes**.



14. Restart Weblogic Adminserver and Managed server.

Load LDIF Files in LDAP

The OID (Oracle Internet Directory 11.1.1.9) must be set up in order to perform the configuration of OID Authenticator in WebLogic Domain.

There are four sample LDIF files provided in the application zip (INSTALL_DIR/reim/application/reim/ldif):

- RGBU-oid-create-groups.ldif
- RGBU-oid-create-users.ldif
- RGBU-oid-delete-groups.ldif
- RGBU-oid-delete-users.ldif

Note: You may use the existing users and existing groups if the enterprise users map to the appropriate groups for 15.0. For more information, refer to the Retail Role Hierarchy section in the Implementing Functional Security of the *Oracle Retail Invoice Matching 15.0 Operation Guide*.

IMPORTANT Note: If you are using the above LDIF files to set up the users and groups, you must update the 'RGBU-oid-create-user.ldif' LDIF file with your password for the 'userpassword' attribute for all the users mentioned in the RGBU-oid-create-user.ldif LDIF file. The changes must be done before importing the users LDIF file 'RGBU-oid-create-users.ldif' into the LDAP. Once the users are imported into the LDAP, remove the 'userpassword' attribute value from the LDIF file. Refer to the *Oracle Internet Directory Administration Guide* for OID password policies for setting up passwords.

User DN and Group DN values (example:dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com) may need to be updated based on the DN values in your OID.

Once the LDIF files are updated for your configuration, the LDIF files can be loaded into LDAP using the ldapadd tool that is included in the OID installation. LDIF files can also be imported in other ways like ODSM.

For example to load RGBU-oid-create-users.ldif using ldapadd (this is done on the OID host)

```
export ORACLE_HOME=/u00/webadmin/products/wls_idm/ORACLE_IDM (this is the ORACLE_HOME of your OID install)
```

```
export PATH=$ORACLE_HOME/bin:$PATH
```

```
$ORACLE_HOME/bin/ldapadd -v -c -h <OID_HOST> -p 3060 -w <ORCLADMIN  
PASSWORD> -D "cn=orcladmin" -f RGBU-oid-create-users.ldif
```

The LDIF 'RGBU-oid-delete-groups.ldif' can be used as needed if you need to delete the groups created from the groups creation LDIF 'RGBU-oid-create-groups.ldif'.

The LDIF 'RGBU-oid-delete-users.ldif' can be used if you need to delete the users created from the users LDIF file 'RGBU-oid-create-users.ldif'.

1. Users in the LDIF will be imported and Users can be verified in your User DN location, example: cn=Users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com.

The group cn=Administrators and user cn=weblogic must have been added to your OID as part of OID documentation. If it is not added already, create the cn=weblogic user **and** cn=Administrators group and add cn=weblogic user as a uniquemember in cn=Administrators group. **Following LDIF scripts can be used for the creation of the user (cn=weblogic) and group (cn=Administrators).**

Note: DN value need to be changed based on your DN value in OID.

For Example:

cn=weblogic user LDIF:

```
dn: cn=weblogic,cn=Users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com
description: A user for the 'Administrators' role.
objectclass: inetOrgPerson
objectclass: organizationalPerson
objectclass: person
objectclass: top
objectclass: orcluser
objectclass: orcluserV2
objectclass: orclIDXPerson
cn: weblogic
orclsamaccountname: weblogic
```

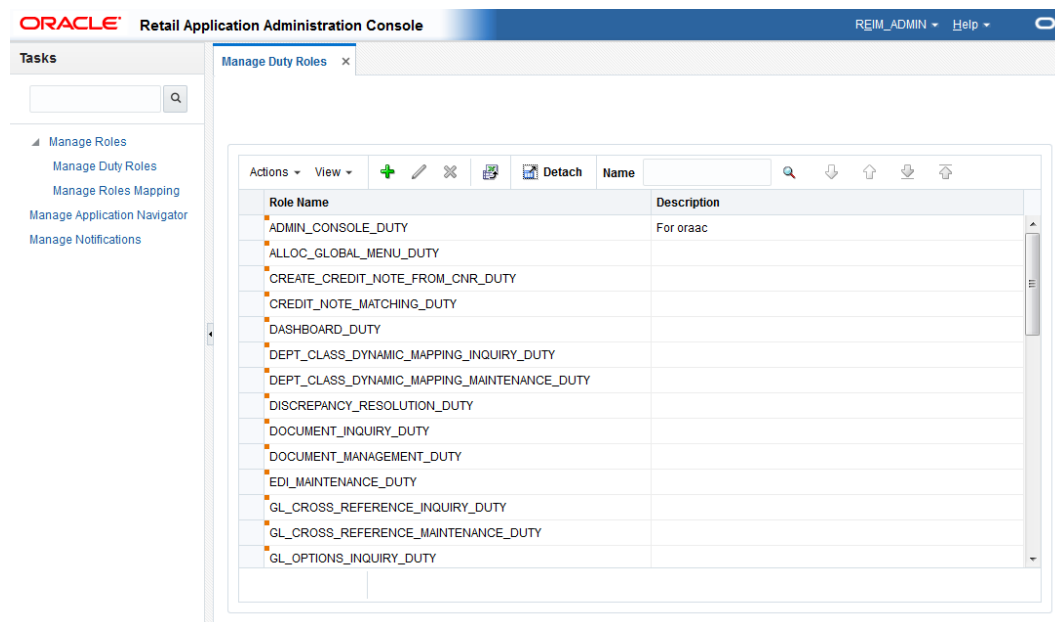
```
sn: weblogic
uid: weblogic
givenname: weblogic
displayname: weblogic
userpassword: <your password here>
employeeNumber:
middleName:
orclHireDate:
telephoneNumber:
facsimileTelephoneNumber:
mail: weblogic@rgbu.generated.oracle.com
postalAddress:
street:
postalCode:
title:
employeeType:
```

cn= Administrators group LDIF:

```
dn: cn=Administrators,cn=groups,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com
objectclass: groupOfUniqueNames
objectclass: orclGroup
objectclass: top
cn: Administrators
description: Administrators
displayname: Administrators
uniquemember: cn=weblogic,cn=users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com
```

Oracle Retail Application Administration Console

Oracle Retail Application Administration Console (ORAAC) is a tool used by an administrator to manage application roles, manage the application navigator and manage notifications. It facilitates the customization of default RGBU role mappings to suit the retailer's business role model. ORAAC is deployed along with the ReIM application and accessed from the user menu of the ReIM application's user interface.



Only the user with ReIM Application Administrator privilege can access ORAAC from the ReIM application.

As part of the Retail Invoice Matching Application install, RAAC gets installed with one default role REIM_APPLICATION_ADMINISTRATOR_JOB role. The same job role will also exist in ReIM's jazn-data.xml file. The below options can be used for the set up.

Option 1:

Create the REIM_APPLICATION_ADMINISTRATOR_JOB role in your LDAP and assign that role to a user who intends to execute the role mapping process.

Option 2:

Create a Job role in your LDAP and map the intended job role in the LDAP to the REIM_APPLICATION_ADMINISTRATOR_JOB role using enterprise manager.

Since the user is part of the REIM_APPLICATION_ADMINISTRATOR_JOB role, the user first access the REIM application app and then launch RASRM for role mapping from the user menu of the REIM application.

Note: The REIM_APPLICATION_ADMINISTRATOR_JOB role must have been already created if using the sample LDIF files which are provided as part of the Retail Invoice Matching Application zip file.

Clustered Installations – Preinstallation Steps

Skip this section if you are not clustering the application server.

1. Make sure that you are able to start and stop the managed servers that are part of the ReIM Cluster from the WebLogic Admin Console.

There are no additional steps before running the installer for Retail Invoice Matching.

(Optional) Analyze Changes in the Patch

Note: See [Appendix: Analyze Tool](#) for details and instructions to run the Analyze Tool. This appendix also contains screens and fields in the tool.

Expand the ReIM Application Distribution

To expand the ReIM application distribution, do the following.

1. Log in to the UNIX server as the user who owns the WebLogic installation. Create a new staging directory for the ReIM application distribution (reim15application.zip). There should be a minimum of 300 MB disk space available for the application installation files.

Example: /u00/webadmin/media/reim

This location is referred to as `INSTALL_DIR` for the remainder of this chapter.

2. Copy reim15application.zip to `INSTALL_DIR` and extract its contents.

Example: `unzip reim15application.zip`

Run the Oracle Retail Invoice Matching Installer

Once you have a managed server that is configured and started, you can run the Oracle Retail Invoice Matching application installer. This installer configures and deploys the Oracle Retail Invoice Matching application.

Note: See [Appendix: Oracle Retail Invoice Matching Application Installer Screens](#) for details about every screen and field in the application installer.

Note: It is recommended that the installer be run as the same UNIX account which owns the application server `ORACLE_HOME` files.

1. Change directories to `INSTALL_DIR/reim/application`.
2. Set the `ORACLE_HOME`, `JAVA_HOME`, and `WEBLOGIC_DOMAIN_HOME` environment variables. `ORACLE_HOME` should point to your WebLogic installation. `JAVA_HOME` should point to the Java JDK 1.7+. This is typically the same JDK which is being used by the WebLogic domain where Application is getting installed. `WEBLOGIC_DOMAIN_HOME` should point to the full path of the domain into which ReIM will be installed.
3. If a secured datasource is going to be configured you also need to set “`ANT_OPTS`” so the installer can access the key and trust store that is used for the datasource security:

```
export ANT_OPTS="-Djavax.net.ssl.keyStore=<PATH TO KEY STORE> -
Djavax.net.ssl.keyStoreType=jks -Djavax.net.ssl.keyStorePassword=<KEYSTORE
PASSWORD> -Djavax.net.ssl.trustStore=<PATH TO TRUST STORE> -
Djavax.net.ssl.trustStoreType=jks -
Djavax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword=<TRUSTSTORE PASSWORD>"
```

An example of this would be:

```
export ANT_OPTS="-  
Djavax.net.ssl.keyStore=/u00/webadmin/product/identity.keystore -  
Djavax.net.ssl.keyStoreType=jks -Djavax.net.ssl.keyStorePassword=retail123 -  
Djavax.net.ssl.trustStore=/u00/webadmin/product/identity.truststore -  
Djavax.net.ssl.trustStoreType=jks -  
Djavax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword=retail123"
```

4. If you are using an X server such as Exceed, set the DISPLAY environment variable so that you can run the installer in GUI mode (recommended). If you are not using an X server, or the GUI is too slow over your network, unset DISPLAY for text mode.
5. Run the install.sh script. This launches the installer. After installation is completed, a detailed installation log file is created (reinstall.<timestamp>.log). See [Appendix: Oracle Retail Invoice Matching Application Installer Screens](#) for illustrations of installer screens and details about what information needs to be entered on each screen.

Resolving Errors Encountered During Application Installation

If the application installer encounters any errors, it halts execution immediately. You can run the installer in silent mode so that you do not have to retype the settings for your environment. See [Appendix: Installer Silent Mode](#) in this document for instructions on silent mode.

See [Appendix: Common Installation Errors](#) in this document for a list of common installation errors.

Because the application installation is a full reinstall every time, any previous partial installs are overwritten by the successful installation.

Post-Installation Steps

Update the following settings in WebLogic:

Transaction Time Out

The transaction time out is set at the Domain Level in Weblogic console

1. Login to the WebLogic Console.
2. Navigate to REIMDomain/Configuration/JTA/Timeout Seconds.
3. Set Timeout Seconds to 1200000.

Data Source Capacity

Depending on your planned load, you may need to increase the capacity on the ReIM data sources to accommodate more concurrent connections. When increasing this setting, ensure that your ReIM database has processes setting large enough to accommodate the new maximum.

1. Login to the WebLogic Console.
2. Click the Data Sources link on the Home Screen. The Data Source screen is displayed.
3. Under the list of Data Sources, click the ApplicationDBDS data source.
4. Click the Connection Pool tab.
5. Set the Maximum Capacity to 1000.
6. Repeat for all data sources.

Clustered Installations – Post-Installation Steps

If you are installing the ReIM application to a clustered WebLogic Server environment, there are some extra steps you need to take to complete the installation. In these instructions, the application server node with the ORACLE_HOME you used for the ReIM installer is referred to as the *master server*. All other nodes are referred to as the *remote server*.

1. The ReIM batch files should be copied from the master server to each of the remote servers under the same path as on the master server. You should take the <retailhome>/batch directory and copy it onto the remote servers under the same path.
2. The Oracle Retail Installation creates some security files on \$WEBLOGIC_DOMAIN_HOME/retail/context root/config directory. Copy this directory to each remote node of the Cluster, matching the full path of the location of this directory on main node.
3. The Oracle Retail Installation creates some properties files on \$WEBLOGIC_DOMAIN_HOME/retail/context root/ properties directory. Copy this directory to each remote node of the Cluster, matching the full path of the location of this directory on main node

Installing the REIM BI Publisher Templates

In this section we will outline how the REIM report templates are installed into the appropriate BI server repositories which will be referred to as BI_REPOSITORY

Example: <DOMAIN_HOME>/config/bipublisher/repository

Report files are available from - " INSTALL_DIR/reim/reports " and have to be copied into the newly created directory within the Reports directory under the BI Publisher Guest folder.

1. Create the directory to hold the reports under <BI_REPOSITORY>
mkdir <BI_REPOSITORY>/Reports/Guest/REIM
2. Change directory to the INSTALL_DIR/reports. This directory contains subdirectories whose names reflect the names of report templates provided with REIM.
 - a. Copy each report directory into the directory created above

For example,

```
cp -R * <BI_REPOSITORY>/Reports/Guest/REIM
```

Test the ReIM Application

After the application installer completes you should have a working ReIM application installation. To launch the application, open a web browser and go to [http://hostname:\(managed_server_port\)/<context_root>/index.jsp](http://hostname:(managed_server_port)/<context_root>/index.jsp).

If you have configured a WebTier to a front end ReIM application, use http port instead of managed server port.

Example: <http://appserver1:17009/reim01/index.jsp>

reim.properties

The reim.properties file contains most of the settings for the ReIM application. Many properties in this file are set by the installer to get a working application up and running, but you may want to modify other settings in this file.

To modify settings in the properties file, you must redeploy the ReIM application. The properties values are stored in the templates/reim.properties file, which is in the directory where you expanded the ReIM installer files (for example, <INSTALL_DIR>/reim/application/templates/reim.properties, where <INSTALL_DIR> is the directory the application installer was unzipped).

Edit the reim.properties file to set the properties to the desired values. Then rerun the installer to deploy ReIM.

integration.properties

The below changes need to be done only if WWAV credentials have been enabled for reim during deployment.

The integration.properties can be found under

<DOMAIN_HOME>/retail/<reim app deployment name>/<6m8whs>/reim.war/WEB-INF/classes/com/retek/reim/integration.properties

Before changes, the integration.properties would look like the below:

```
#Drill Forward - start
#webservice.financial.drill.forward=https://hostname.us.oracle.com:7068/fin-DrillBackForwardUrl-AppServiceDecorator/ProxyService/DrillBackForwardUrlAppServiceProxy?wsdl
webservice.financial.drill.forward.wsdl=@deploy.webservice.drill.forward.wsdl@

#The below entries are not required as per Dev Team.
#webservice.financial.drill.forward.url.targetnamespace=@deploy.webservice.drill.f
orward.url.targetnamespace@
#webservice.financial.drill.forward.targetsystem=@deploy.webservice.drill.forward.
targetsysteem@
#Drill Forward - end

#webservice provider URL for account validation
webservice.financial.account.validation=https://msp00abq.us.oracle.com:7068/fin-GLAccountValidation-AppServiceDecorator/ProxyService/GLAccountValidationAppServiceProxy?wsdl
webservice.financial.account.validation.namespace=http://www.oracle.com/retail/fin/integration/services/GLAccountValidationService/v1
webservice.financial.account.validation.local.code=GLAccountValidationService

#webservice user alias for account validation
webservice.financial.account.validation.credential.alias=${webservice.account.vali
dation.credential.alias.trimmed.upper}

#enable webservice credentials
enable.webservice.account.validation.credentials=@deploy.enable.webservice.account
.validation.credentials@
```

After the changes have been made, integration.properties should look like the below:

```
#webservice provider URL for drill forward
#Drill Forward - start
#webservice.financial.drill.forward=@deploy.webservice.drill.forward@
```

```

webservice.financial.drill.forward.wsdl=http://hostname.us.oracle.com:18008/fin-
DrillBackForwardUrl-
AppServiceDecorator/ProxyService/DrillBackForwardUrlAppServiceProxy?wsdl

#The below entries are not required as per Dev Team.
#webservice.financial.drill.forward.url.targetnamespace=http://www.oracle.com/reta
il/fin/integration/services/DrillBackForwardUrlService/v1
#webservice.financial.drill.forward.targetsystem=@deploy.webservice.drill.forward.
targetsystem@
#Drill Forward - end

#webservice provider URL for account validation
webservice.financial.account.validation=https://msp00abq.us.oracle.com:7068/fin-
GIAccountValidation-
AppServiceDecorator/ProxyService/GIAccountValidationAppServiceProxy?wsdl
webservice.financial.account.validation.namespace=http://www.oracle.com/retail/fin
/integration/services/GIAccountValidationService/v1
webservice.financial.account.validation.local.code=GIAccountValidationService

#webservice user alias for account validation
webservice.financial.account.validation.credential.alias=${webservice.account.vali
dation.credential.alias.trimmed.upper}

#enable webservice credentials
enable.webservice.account.validation.credentials=@deploy.enable.webservice.account
.validation.credentials@

Bounce the domain once the changes have been made.

```

ReIM Batch Scripts

The ReIM application installer configures and installs the batch scripts under <retailhome>/reim-batch.

Example: /u00/projects/j2ee/reim/rem-batch

The batch scripts are copies of the same generic file. Their file names determine which functionality is run. To run batch scripts, use the alias name provided in the installer when ReIM is installed, the one that is written out to the Java wallet (for example, reim_batchpgmname ADMIN).

For the scripts to run correctly, values for the following variables must be provided:

- ORACLE_HOME: WebLogic Home directory where the ReIM application has been deployed.
- JAVA_HOME: Java 7.0 (1.7.0) JDK installation that typically is being used by the WebLogic Application Server.

Example: export
ORACLE_HOME=/u00/webadmin/products/wls_retail
export JAVA_HOME=/u00/webadmin/products/jdk_java
export PATH=\$JAVA_HOME/bin:\$PATH

Online Help

The application installer automatically installs Online Help to the proper location. It is accessible from the help links within the application.

Single Sign-On

Skip this section if ReIM is not used within an Oracle Single Sign-On environment.

Note: This section assumes the Oracle WebLogic Server has already been registered with the Oracle Access Manager (OAM) via the oamreg tool. See the Oracle Single Sign-On (OAM using webgate) documentation for details.

To set up single sign-on, complete the following steps.

1. If you are using Oracle Retail Invoice Matching in an Oracle Single Sign-On environment, then the Invoice Matching root context must be protected. Modify the following files

- `mod_wl_ohs.conf` located in
`<WEBLOGIC_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/instance1/config/OHS/ohs1`
`LoadModule weblogic_module`
`"<WEBLOGIC_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/ohs/modules/mod_wl_ohs.so"`
`<IfModule weblogic_module>`
 `WebLogicHost <WEBLOGIC_HOST>`
 `WebLogicPort <WEBLOGIC_PORT>`
 `Debug ON`
 `WLogFile /tmp/weblogic.log`
 `MatchExpression *.jsp`
`</IfModule>`

 `<Location /ReimViewController >`
 `SecureProxy ON`
 `WebLogicHost <WEBLOGIC_HOST>`
 `WebLogicPort <WEBLOGIC_PORT>`
 `SetHandler weblogic-handler`
 `WLCookieName REIMSESSIONID`
 `WProxySSL ON`
 `WProxySSLPassThrough ON`
 `WSSSLWallet`
 `"${ORACLE_INSTANCE}/config/${COMPONENT_TYPE}/${COMPONENT_NAME}/keystores/h`
 `ost_name"`
 `</Location>`

 `<Location /RetailAppsAdminConsole-REIM >`
 `WebLogicHost <WEBLOGIC_HOST>`
 `WebLogicPort <WEBLOGIC_PORT>`
 `SetHandler weblogic-handler`
 `WLCookieName REIMSESSIONID`
 `WProxySSL ON`
 `WProxySSLPassThrough ON`
 `SecureProxy ON`
 `WSSSLWallet`
 `"${ORACLE_INSTANCE}/config/${COMPONENT_TYPE}/${COMPONENT_NAME}/keystores/h`
 `ost_name"`

Adding Logout URI

After checking that the default authenticator's control flag is set correctly as per the OAM documentation, and that the order of the providers is correct, add an OAM SSO provider and restart all servers as described below.

1. Connect to the WebLogic domain using WLST and run the following command:

```
addOAMSSOProvider(loginuri="/<appcontextroot>/adfAuthentication",  
logouturi="/oamssso/logout.html")
```

Example:

```
<WEBLOGIC_HOME>/common/bin/wlst.sh
```

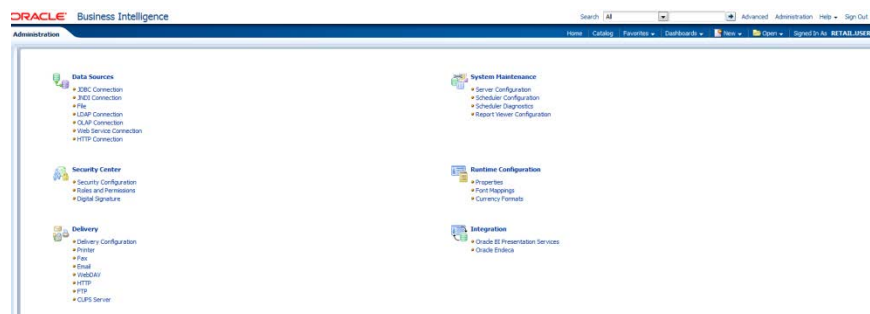
Connect() and proceed with the above step

Configuring BIPublisher for REIM

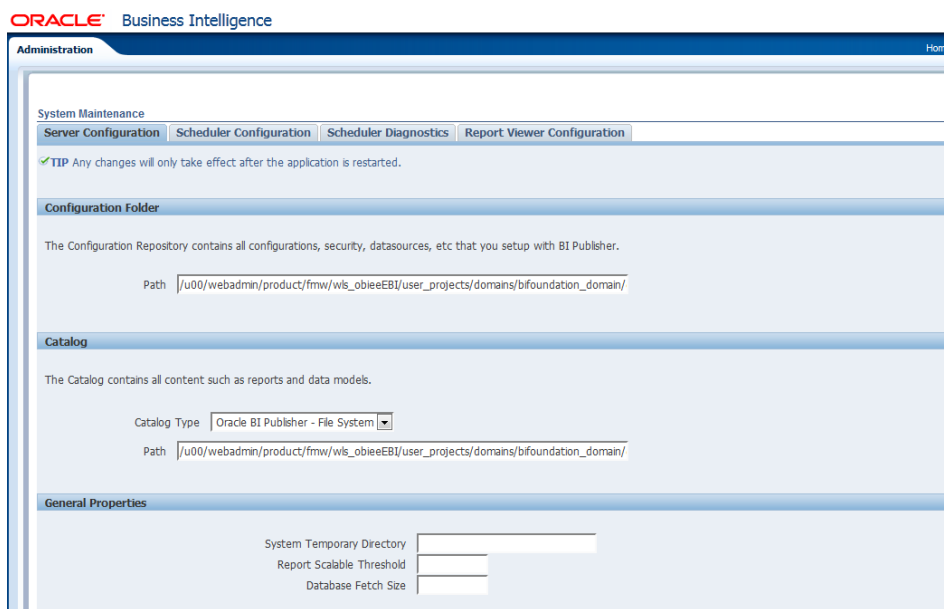
Note: This section is not required if BIPublisher has been configured as part of RMS Installation.

1. Login with the credentials you entered in your Oracle BI EE configuration (weblogic / password). Example URL: [http://\[obiee_host\]:\[obiee_server_port\]/xmlpserver](http://[obiee_host]:[obiee_server_port]/xmlpserver)

2. Configure the BI Publisher repository. After signon, select “Administration”.



3. On the System Maintenance Section, click Server Configuration
4. Navigate to the Configuration Screen.

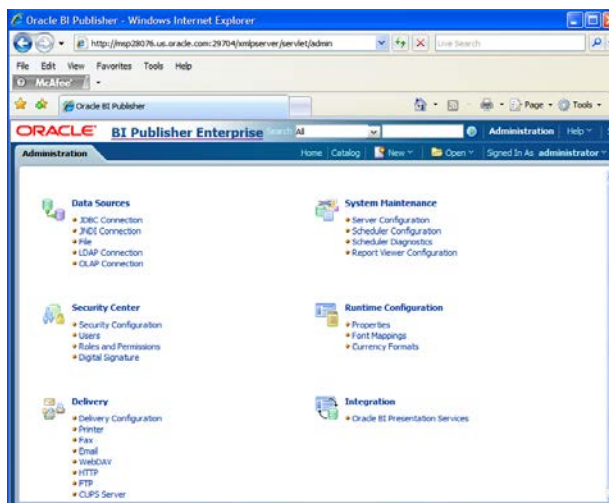


5. On this screen on the Configuration Folder section, enter the path to your repository. On the Catalog section enter Catalog Type: Oracle BI Publisher – File System from the drop down menu.

This is the path you entered in the Configuration Section and Catalog Section:

`$MIDDLEWARE_HOME/user_projects/domains/bifoundation_domain/config/bipublisher/repository`

6. Restart the BI Publisher after this change.
7. Set BiPublisher security model.



- a. On the BiPublisher 11g Administration Screen, click Security Configuration from the Security Center.



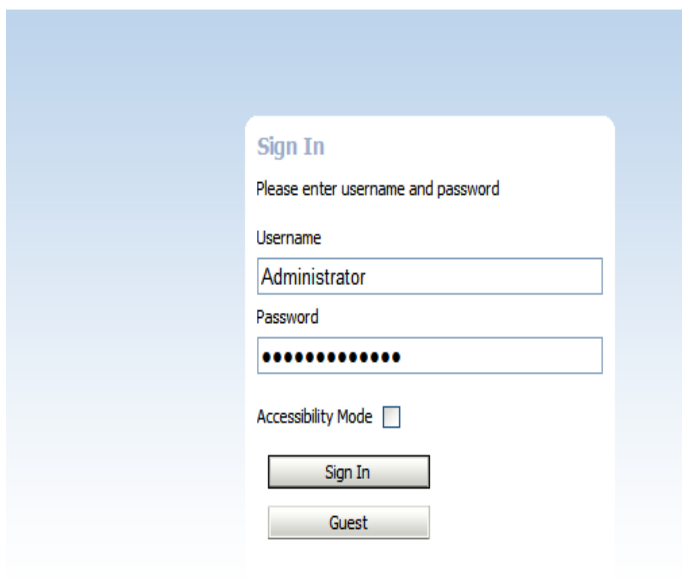
- b. Enable a supersuser by checking the “Enable Local SuperUser” box and by entering name and password on the corresponding fields on this screen.
- c. Mark “Allow Guest Access” check box. Enter “Guest” as Guest Folder Name
- d. Scroll down the screen and locate the Authorization section:



- e. Select BI Publisher Security from the Security Model list.
- f. The default user name for the BI Publisher Security Model is Administrator
- g. On the password text field, enter a value that you can remember. It is going to be the password for Login to xmlpserver.
- h. Save the changes and re-start the BIPublisher server.
- i. Launch xmlpserver. To Login you must use the new credentials that you set up in the former step: Username: <Administrator User> and Password: <password for Administrator User>.

Note: You will not be able to login to xmlpserver as weblogic any more because we have already changed the Security Model.

ORACLE BI Publisher Enterprise

The image shows the Oracle BI Publisher Enterprise Sign In screen. It has a light blue background. In the center is a white rounded rectangle containing the 'Sign In' form. The form has the title 'Sign In' in blue, followed by the instruction 'Please enter username and password'. There are two input fields: 'Username' with 'Administrator' entered, and 'Password' with masked characters (dots). Below the password field is an 'Accessibility Mode' checkbox, which is unchecked. At the bottom of the form are two buttons: 'Sign In' and 'Guest'.

8. Set the repository path.

Example:

/u00/webadmin/product/10.3.X/WLS/user_projects/domains/bifoundation_domain/config/bipublisher/repository In the Oracle BI EE file system you will find the repository in the following location:

\$OBIEE/wls/user_projects/domains/bifoundation_domain/config/bipublisher/repository

In the repository you will see the following directories:

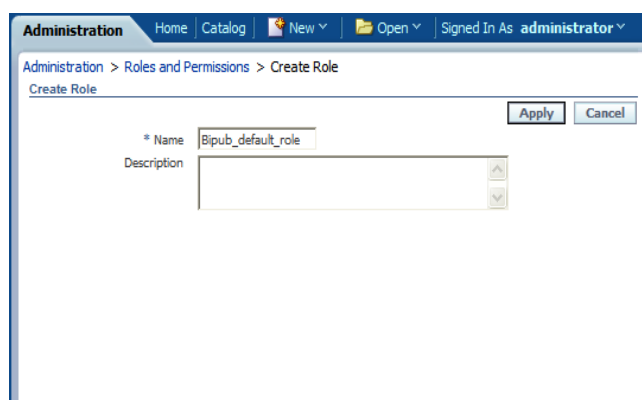
- Admin
- DemoFiles
- Reports
- Tools
- Users

9. Create role Bipub_default_role.

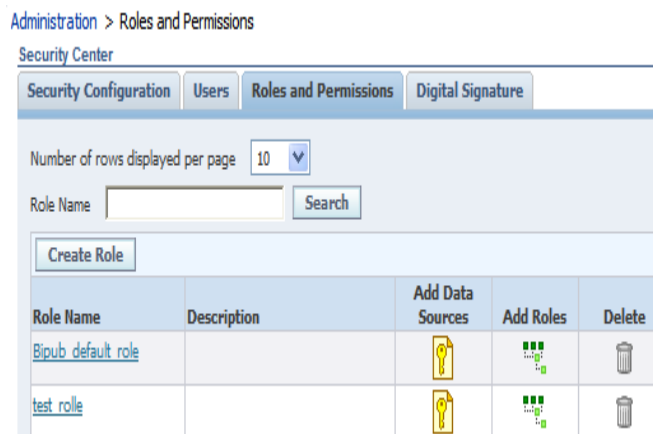
- a. From the xmlpserver Administration screen, scroll down to Security Center and click Roles and Permissions.



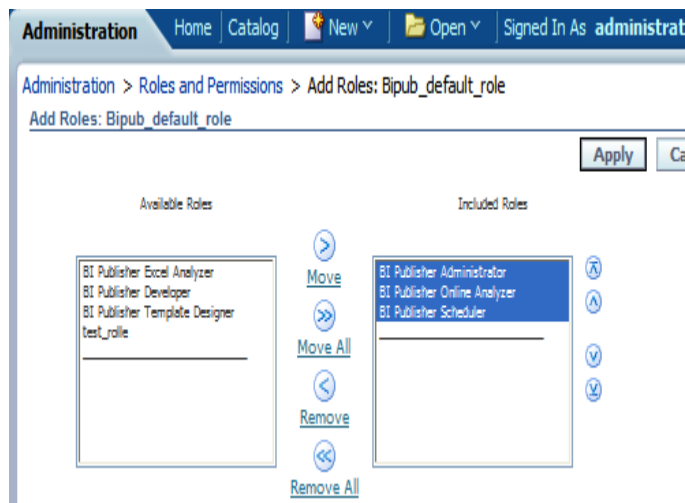
- b. On the Roles and Permissions screen, click the Create Role button.



- c. Create the Bipub_default_role. Enter in Create Role Section name of the role.
- d. When the information has been entered press Apply changes.
10. Assign BiPub system roles to the newly created Bipub_default_role.
- a. To assign BiPub system roles to the newly create Bipub_default_role, go to Security Center section and navigate to the Roles and Permissions screen:



- b. On the Roles and Permissions screen you should see the new role created: “Bipub_default_role”. Add multiple roles to the Bipub_Default_Role by pressing the corresponding green icon on the Add Roles column.

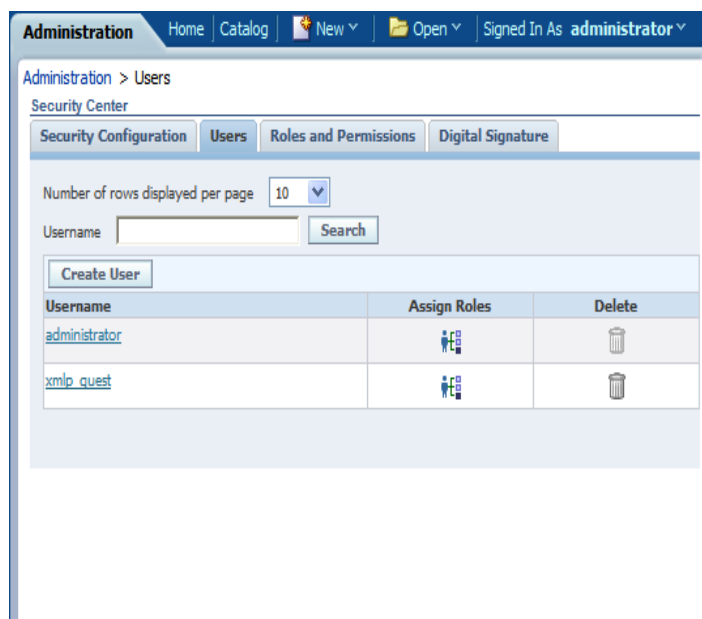


- c. From the Available Roles panel, select the ones needed for your reports and click **Move** to move them to the Included Roles panel.
- d. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

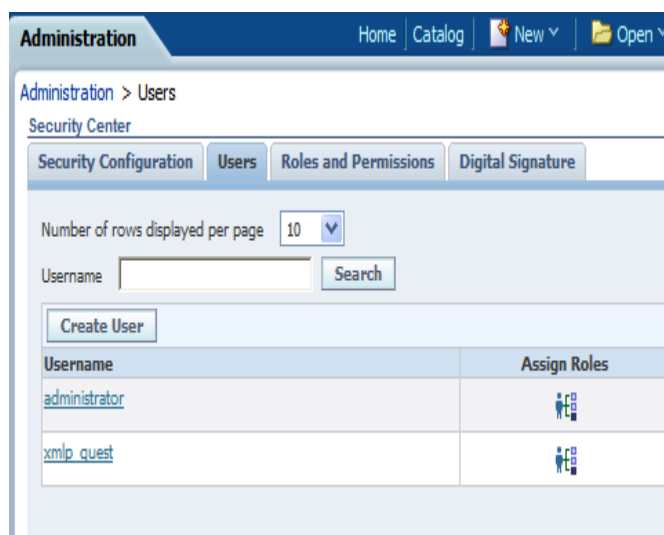
11. Create Guest (XMLP_GUEST) user.



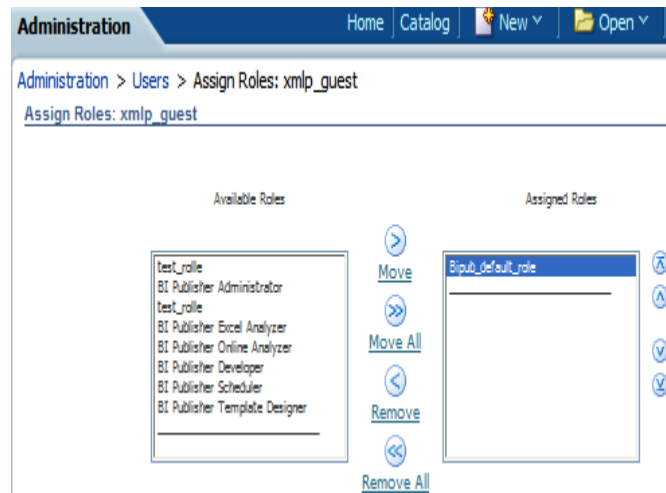
- a. From the xmlpserver Administration screen scroll down to Security Center section and click **Users** to navigate to the next screen.



- b. Click **Create User** to create the “xmlp_guest” user and save the changes.
12. Adding the Bipub_default_role to XMLP_GUEST user.
 - a. Open the Users section.



- b. For xmlp_guest user, click the Assign Roles icon to navigate to the next screen.



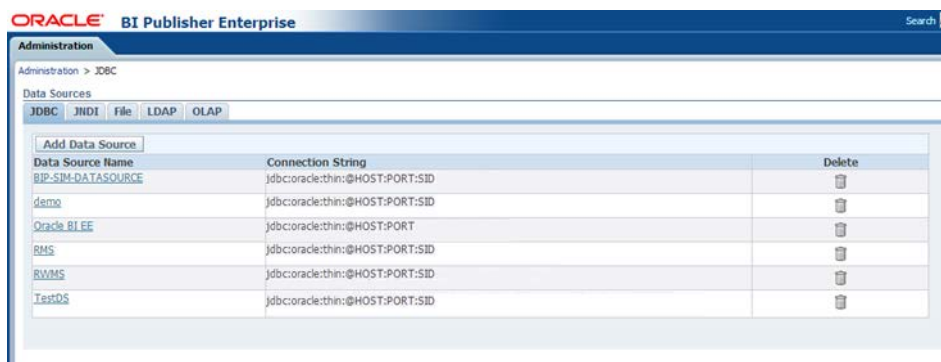
- c. On the Assign Roles screen, select the BiPub_default_role from the Available Roles panel and click Move to move it to the Assigned Roles panel. Click **Apply** to save your changes.
13. Create folders. Complete the following steps.
 - a. Create the “Guest” and “REIM” directories on the server. Change directories into these directories and verify that the new folders have the 755 permission. Example assuming that /u00/webadmin is the root of the installation:


```
cd
/u00/webadmin/product/10.3.X/WLS/user_projects/domains/bifoundation_domain
/config/bipublisher/repository/Reports
mkdir
/u00/webadmin/product/10.3.X/WLS/user_projects/domains/bifoundation_domain
/config/bipublisher/repository/Reports/Guest
cd Guest
mkdir
/u00/webadmin/product/10.3.X/WLS/user_projects/domains/bifoundation_domain
/config/bipublisher/repository/Reports/Guest/REIM
```

Configuring the RMS JDBC connection

Follow the below steps to configure JDBC connection for RMS Data Source name. This is the data source that REIM uses for REIM reports.

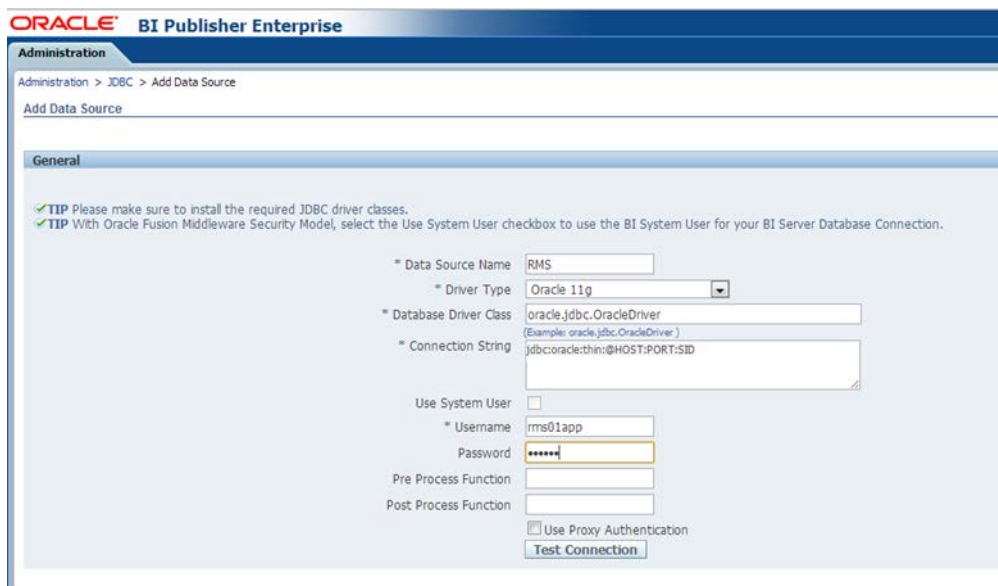
1. Log on with the default user ID and passwords for BI Publisher using the administrative user and password configured previously.
2. Click the **Administration** tab and select the **JDBC Connection** hyperlink in the Data Sources lists. The following screen is displayed. Click **Add Data Source**.



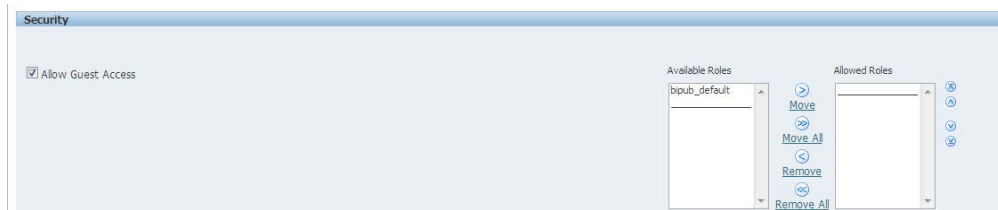
- Enter **RMS** for the datasource name (datasource MUST be RMS as the xdm file has code pointing at a datasource named RMS), and enter the appropriate details for the RMS data source. Once the data is entered, click **Test Connection** to test the connection.

The syntax for connection is `jdbc:oracle:thin:@<hostname>:<port>/<servicename>`

For example: `jdbc:oracle:thin:@hostname.example:1521/servicename`



- Ensure that Allow Guest Access is checked in the Security Section.



- Click **Apply** to save the information.

Configure the Oracle BI EE Environment for Operational Insights

This section provides the details on how to configure Operational Insights Installation. This is an optional section as you can choose not to use Operational Insights. Single Sign-On configuration for REIM, ALLOC, ReSA and Oracle BI EE is highly recommended for configuring Operational Insights.

Terms

The following terms apply to the Operational Insights installation and configuration:

OBIEE_PORT – The port where the Oracle BI EE administration server is running.

OBIEE_MS_PORT – The Oracle BI EE Managed server port.

OBIEE_WEBLOGIC_DOMAIN_HOME – The Oracle BI EE WebLogic domain path.

RMS_HOST – The host where RMS is installed in WebLogic.

Install Oracle BI

For step-by-step instructions on how to install and configure Oracle BI EE, see the “Installing Oracle Business Intelligence” chapter of the *Oracle BI EE Installation Guide*.

Configure OID Provider in Oracle BI EE WebLogic Domain

The OID Provider needs to be configured in Oracle BI EE WebLogic domain.

Note: In this section, the base DN “dn=us,dn=oracle,dn=com” is used as an example. Modify this value as per the organisation’s ldap settings.

Perform the following procedure to create providers in the domains created in the previous steps.

1. Log in to the Administration Console.
`http://<OBIEE_HOST>:<OBIEE_PORT>/console/`
2. In the Domain Structure frame, click **Security Realms**.
3. In the Realms table, click **myrealm**. The Settings for myrealm page is displayed.
4. Click the Providers tab.
5. Click **Lock & Edit** and then click **New**. The ‘Create a New Authentication Provider’ page is displayed.

Home Log Out Preferences Record Help

Home > Summary of Servers > Summary of Machines > apphost.us.oracle.com > Summary of Servers > Summary of Security Realms > myrealm > Providers

Create a New Authentication Provider

OK Cancel

Create a new Authentication Provider

The following properties will be used to identify your new Authentication Provider.

* Indicates required fields

The name of the authentication provider.

* **Name:**

This is the type of authentication provider you wish to create.

Type:

OK Cancel

- Enter **OIDAuthenticator** in the Name field and select **OracleInternetDirectoryAuthenticator** as the type. Click **OK**.

Home Log Out Preferences Record Help Welcome, weblogic Connected to:

Home > Summary of Servers > Summary of Machines > apphost.us.oracle.com > Summary of Servers > Summary of Security Realms > myrealm > Providers

Settings for myrealm

Configuration Users and Groups Roles and Policies Credential Mappings **Providers** Migration

Authentication Password Validation Authorization Adjudication Rule Mapping Auditing Credential Mapping Certification Path Keystores

An Authentication provider allows WebLogic Server to establish trust by validating a user. You must have one Authentication provider in a security realm, and you can configure multiple Authentication providers in a security realm. Different types of Authentication providers are designed to access different data stores, such as LDAP servers or DBMS. You can also configure a Realm Adapter Authentication provider that allows you to work with users and groups from previous releases of WebLogic.

[Customize this Table](#)

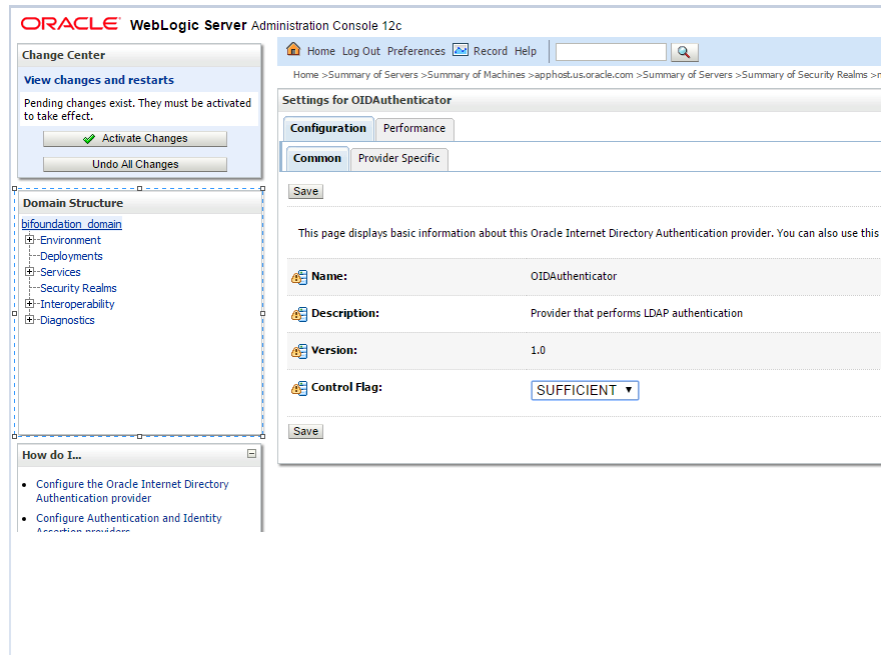
Authentication Providers

New Delete Reorder Showing 1 to 4 of 4

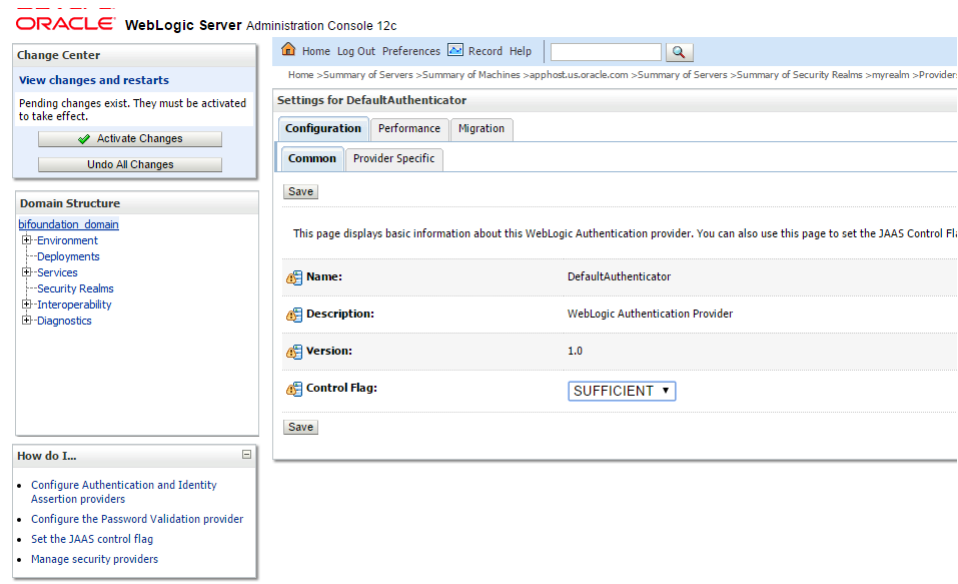
☐	Name	Description	Version
☐	DefaultAuthenticator	WebLogic Authentication Provider	1.0
☐	DefaultIdentityAsserter	WebLogic Identity Assertion provider	1.0
☐	OIDAuthenticator	Provider that performs LDAP authentication	1.0

New Delete Reorder Showing 1 to 4 of 4

- All the providers are displayed. Click **OIDAuthenticator**. Settings of **OIDAuthenticator** are displayed.



8. Set the Control Flag field to SUFFICIENT and click **Save**.
9. From the Providers tab, click on DefaultAuthenticator -> Configuration tab -> Common tab. Update the Control Flag to SUFFICIENT.
10. Click **Save**.



11. From the Providers tab, click the "OIDAuthenticator" (you just created), in the configuration -> Provider Specific tab enter your LDAP connection details:
The values shown below are examples only. You should match the entries to your OID.
 - Host: <oidhost>
 - Port: <oidport>

- Principal: cn=orcladmin
- Credential: <password>
- Confirm Credential: <password>
- User Base DN: cn=users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com
- Check 'Retrieve credentials as principal.'

The screenshot shows the Oracle WebLogic Server Administration Console. The left sidebar contains navigation links like 'Change Center', 'Domain Structure', 'How do I...', 'System Status', and 'Health of Running Servers'. The main content area is titled 'Settings for OIDAuthenticator' and has tabs for 'Configuration' and 'Performance'. The 'Configuration' tab is active, showing a 'Provider Specific' configuration page. The page includes fields for 'Host' (idmhost.us.oracle.com), 'Port' (3060), 'Principal' (cn=orcladmin), 'Credential' (masked), 'Confirm Credential' (masked), 'SSL Enabled' (checkbox), 'User Base DN' (cn=Users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com), 'All Users Filter' ((&(cn=*)|(objectclass=person))), and 'User From Name Filter' ((&(cn=%u)|(objectclass=person))).

12. Modify the following:

Group Base DN: cn=Groups,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com

The screenshot shows the 'Groups' configuration page. It includes fields for 'Group Base DN' (cn=groups,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com), 'All Groups Filter' ((&(cn=*)|(objectclass=group))), 'Group From Name Filter' ((&(cn=%g)|(objectclass=group))), 'Group Search Scope' (subtree), 'Group Membership Searching' (unlimited), and 'Max Group Membership Search Level' (0). There is also an 'Ignore Duplicate Membership' checkbox.

13. Check Propagate Cause For Login Exception

The screenshot shows the 'Cache' configuration page. It includes checkboxes for 'Propagate Cause For Login Exception' and 'Cache Enabled'. Below these are fields for 'Cache Size' (32), 'Cache TTL' (60), and 'GUID Attribute' (orclguid). A 'Save' button is at the bottom.

14. Click **Save**.

15. Click the **Providers** tab.

The screenshot shows the Oracle WebLogic Server Administration Console. On the left, the 'Change Center' panel displays 'View changes and restarts' with a message about pending changes and buttons for 'Activate Changes' and 'Undo All Changes'. Below this is the 'Domain Structure' tree showing a hierarchy from 'bifoundation_domain' down to 'Diagnostics'. The 'How do I...' panel lists tasks like 'Configure the Password Validation provider' and 'Manage security providers'. The main content area is titled 'Settings for myrealm' and has tabs for 'Configuration', 'Users and Groups', 'Roles and Policies', 'Credential Mappings', 'Providers', and 'Migration'. The 'Providers' tab is active, showing sub-tabs for 'Authentication', 'Password Validation', 'Authorization', 'Adjudication', 'Role Mapping', and 'Auditing'. The 'Authentication' sub-tab is selected, displaying a table of 'Authentication Providers'. The table has columns for 'Name', 'Description', and 'Version'. It lists three providers: 'DefaultAuthenticator' (WebLogic Authentication Provider, version 1.0), 'DefaultIdentityAsserter' (WebLogic Identity Assertion provider, version 1.0), and 'OIDAuthenticator' (Provider that performs LDAP authentication, version 1.0). Above the table are buttons for 'New', 'Delete', and 'Reorder', and a status bar indicates 'Showing 1 to 4 of 4'.

Name	Description	Version
DefaultAuthenticator	WebLogic Authentication Provider	1.0
DefaultIdentityAsserter	WebLogic Identity Assertion provider	1.0
OIDAuthenticator	Provider that performs LDAP authentication	1.0

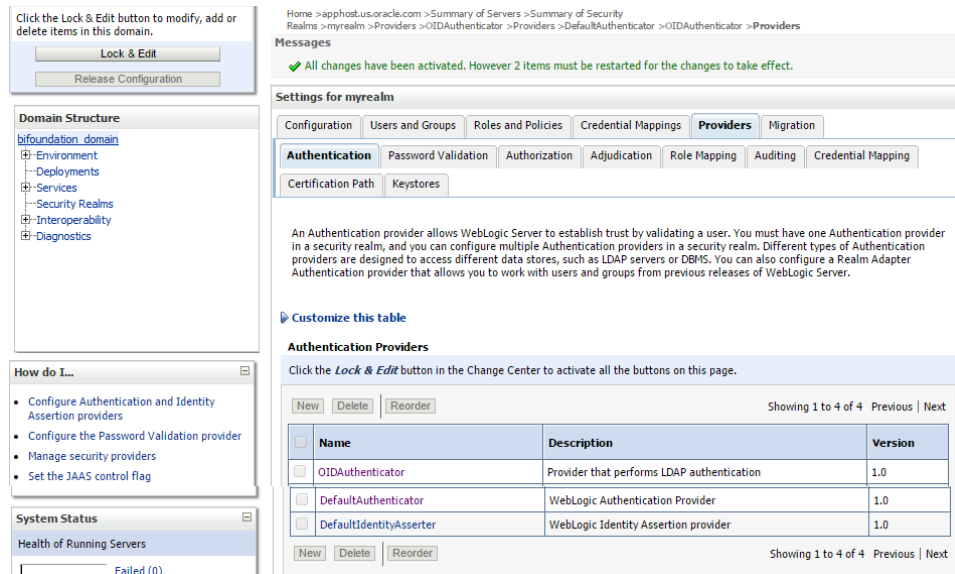
16. Click **Reorder**.

17. Move **OIDAuthenticator** to the top of the providers list

The screenshot shows the 'Reorder Authentication Providers' dialog box. The dialog has 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the top. Below the title bar, it says 'You can reorder your Authentication Providers using the list below. By reordering Authentication Providers, you can alter the authentication sequence.' It then instructs to 'Select authenticator(s) in the list and use arrows to move them up and down in the list.' The 'Authentication Providers' list is shown with 'OIDAuthenticator' selected and moved to the top position. Other providers in the list include 'Trust Service Identity Asserter', 'DefaultAuthenticator', and 'DefaultIdentityAsserter'. The dialog also has 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom.

18. Click **OK**.

19. Once your changes are saved, click **Activate Changes**.



20. Shutdown all servers and restart the admin server using startWebLogic.sh script.

Load LDIF Files in LDAP

The OID (Oracle Internet Directory) must be set up in order to perform the configuration of OID Authenticator in Oracle BI EE WebLogic Domain.

There are two ldifs which need to be loaded in OID.

- BI_Group.ldif
- BI_User.ldif

Note: The ldif files are updated in [Appendix: BI User and Group LDIF Entries](#).

The steps given below can be used to import the Groups and Users into the LDAP using the LDIF files.

Note: If you are using the above LDIF files to set up the users and groups, you must update the 'BI_User.ldif' LDIF file with your password for the 'userpassword' attribute for all the users mentioned in the RESA-oid-create-user.ldif LDIF file. The changes must be done before importing the users LDIF file 'BI_User.ldif' into the LDAP. Once the users are imported into the LDAP, remove the 'userpassword' attribute value from the LDIF file. Refer to the *Oracle Internet Directory Administration Guide* for OID password policies for setting up passwords.

User DN and Group DN values (example: dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com) may need to be updated based on the DN values in your OID.

Once the LDIF files are updated for your configuration, the LDIF files can be loaded into LDAP using the ldapadd tool that is included in the OID installation. LDIF files can also be imported in other ways like ODSM.

For example to load BI_Group.ldif using ldapadd (this is done on the OID host)

```
export ORACLE_HOME=/u00/webadmin/products/wls_idm/ORACLE_IDM (this is
the ORACLE_HOME of your OID install)
export PATH=$ORACLE_HOME/bin:$PATH
$ORACLE_HOME/bin/ldapadd -v -c -h <OID_HOST> -p 3060 -w <ORCLADMIN
PASSWORD> -D "cn=orcladmin" -f BI_Group.ldif
The same can be done to BI_User.ldif
```

Configure Oracle Single Sign-On

Note: This procedure is only needed if you plan on setting up the OBIEE using Single Sign On (SSO) authentication. This can be skipped if SSO is not going to be configured for this environment. The Oracle Access Manager must be configured and the Oracle http server (Webtier and webgate) must be registered into the Oracle Access Manager.

Create the SSO provider in the Oracle BI EE Domain

1. Log into the WebLogic console.
2. Navigate to: security realms -> myrealm (default realm) -> providers.
3. Start a Lock & Edit session.
4. Click **New provider**.
5. Set the provider name (Default: OAMIdentityAsserter).
6. Click **Ok**.
7. Open the new provider configuration.
8. Under Common, set the Control Flag to SUFFICIENT.
9. On the provider list, click **Reorder**.
10. Move the OAMIdentityAsserter to the top of the list, or above the DefaultAuthenticator.
11. Click **Ok**.
12. Click **Activate Changes**.
13. Shutdown the domain.
14. Start the admin and managed servers for the domain.

Configure the Repository (rpd)

Complete the following steps.

1. Stop Oracle BI services by executing 'opmnctl stopall' from <BI_INSTALL_DIRECTORY>\instances\instance1\bin.
2. Update the configuration file located at <BI_INSTALL_DIRECTORY>\instances\instance1\config\OracleBIServerComponent\coreapplication_obis1\NQSConfig.INI. Add a new line under the [REPOSITORY] section. For example:
[REPOSITORY]
Star = Operational_Insights.rpd, DEFAULT;
3. Other default repositories should be commented out in the NQSConfig.INI. For example:
[REPOSITORY]
Star = Operational_Insights.rpd, DEFAULT;

#Star = SampleApplite.rpd, DEFAULT;

4. Change the following setting from FMW_UPDATE_ROLE_AND_USER_REF_GUIDS = NO; to FMW_UPDATE_ROLE_AND_USER_REF_GUIDS= YES;
5. Save and close NQSCfg.INI.
6. Verify the existence of tnsnames.ora file under <BI_INSTALL_DIRECTORY>/Oracle_BI1/network/admin and the file has an entry of the database used by Operational Insights.
7. Proceed to set up the database connection.

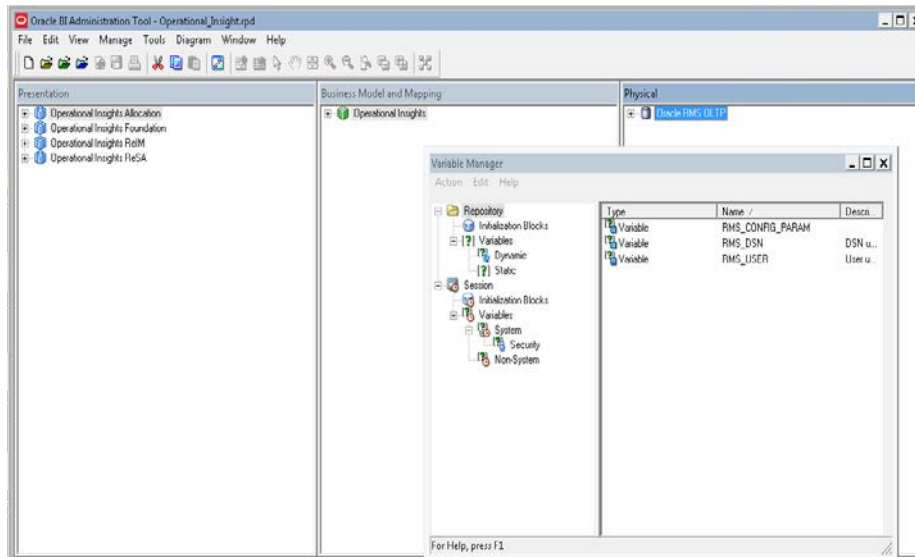
Note: When making any changes to the repository, do it in the offline mode and before saving the changes perform a global consistency check. The global consistency check should not show any errors. Out of the box Operational Insight repository will have some warnings when a Global Consistency Check is done. These warnings do not affect Operational Insight functionality in any way and these are been thoroughly verified.

Set up the Database Connection

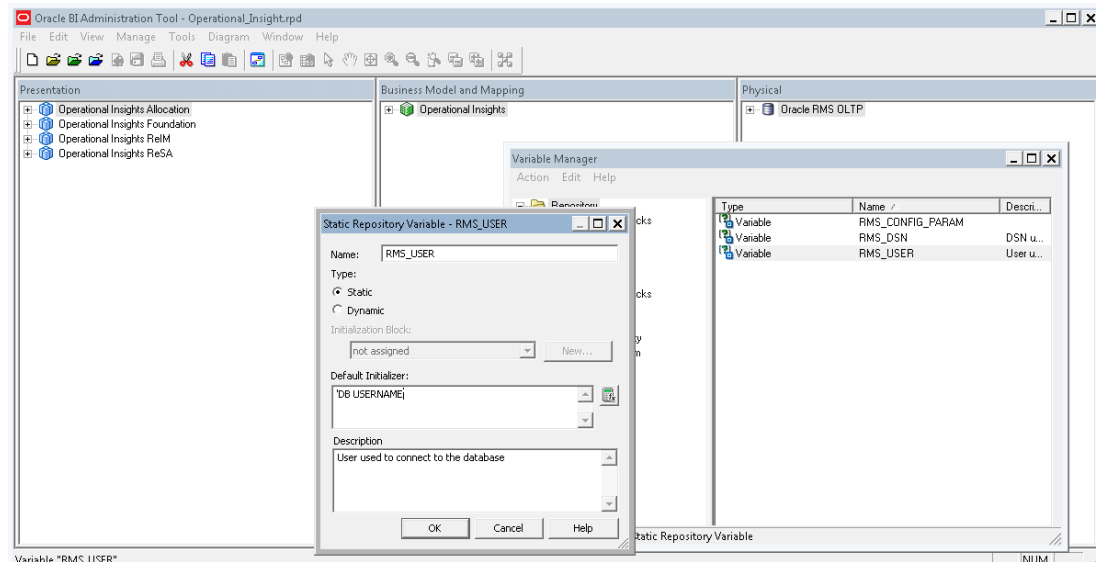
Refer to the “Configuring Repositories” chapter of the *Oracle BI EE System Administrator’s Guide* for additional details.

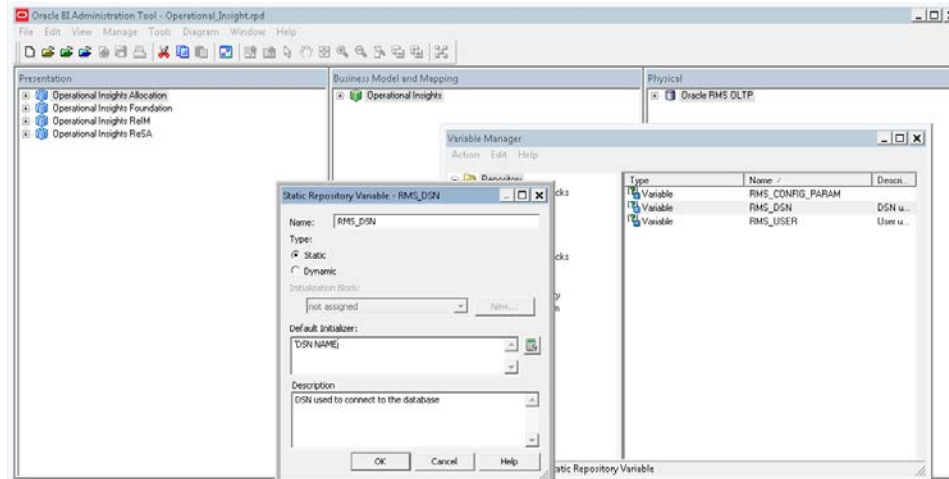
Note: The screen illustrations in the following steps are only examples. The screens that appear depend on the setup of your system.

1. The Rpd.zip is located under <INSTALL DIR>\OI\Rpd and unzip the Rpd.zip to obtain Operational_Insight.rpd file and proceed with DB Connection setup.
2. This change requires moving the rpd to a Microsoft Windows system which has Oracle BI EE installed. Rpd is located at <BI_INSTALL_DIRECTORY>\instances\instance1\bifoundation\OracleBIServerComponent\coreapplication_obis1\repository.
3. Once the Operational_Insights.rpd is moved to a Microsoft Windows system, open it using the Oracle BI Server Administration tool.
4. When prompted for the password, refer to the RPD_post_install.txt located at <BI_INSTALL_DIRECTORY>\instances\instance1\bifoundation\OracleBIServerComponent\coreapplication_obis1\repository.
5. At this time the password of the rpd can be changed if desired. For more details on changing the password refer to the chapter, “Managing Oracle BI Repository Files” of the Oracle BI EE Metadata Repository Builder's Guide.
6. When the rpd is opened, from the menu, go to Manage > Variables.



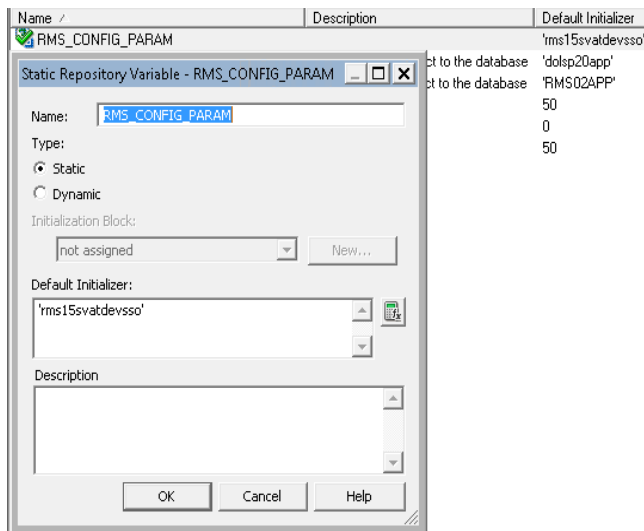
- Under Repository Static variables, Double-click on RMS_USER to edit with main RMS schema username (for example, RMS01) and RMS_DSN with Data Source Name of the RMS Database.





8. Configure Rpd variable for RMS forms In-context launch

- Change the value of Repository variable: **RMS_CONFIG_PARAM**

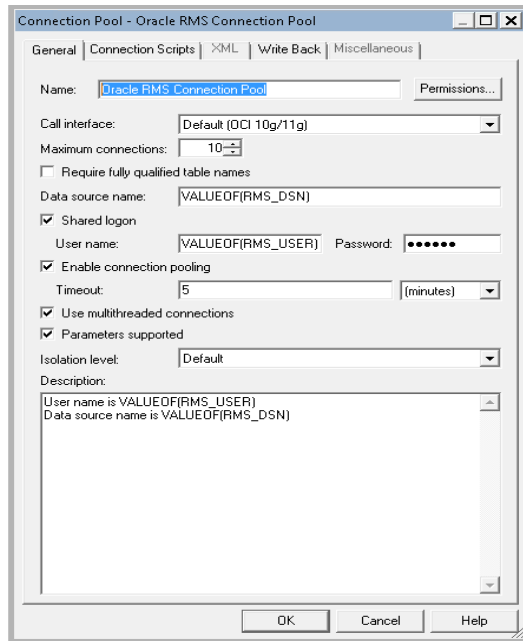


Note: If RMS URL is as below:

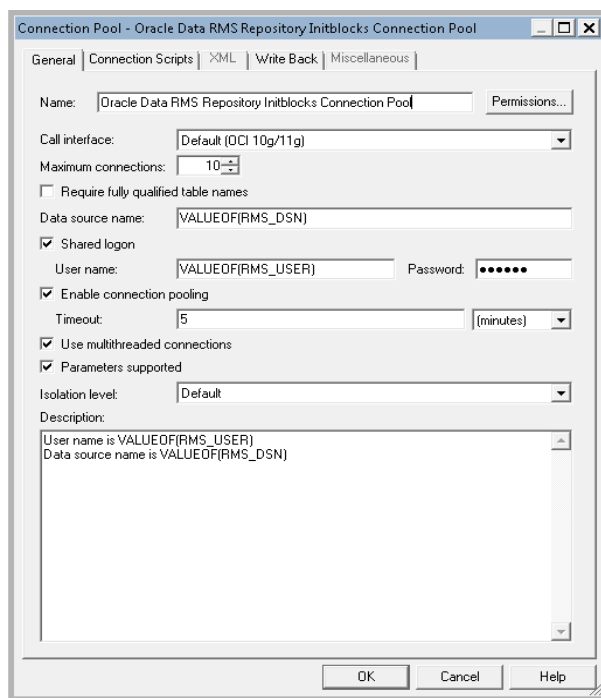
`http://<RMS_HOST>:<PORT>/forms/frmservlet?config=<RMS15SSO>`

Then the value of “RMS_CONFIG_PARAM” variable will be “RMS15SSO”

- In the Physical Layer, open the Connection Pool (Oracle RMS Connection Pool) under “Oracle RMS OLTP” and update the password for the RMS User. The following is a sample of the Oracle RMS Connection Pool screen.



10. Follow the same steps for Oracle Data RMS Repository Initblocks Connection Pool.



11. Save the Operational_Insights.rpd file.
12. Test the database connection by right-clicking on any of the tables in the Physical Layer, and select Update Row Count. The number of rows will be shown when that table is highlighted if the database connection is successful.
13. FTP the rpd back to
`<BI_INSTALL_DIRECTORY>/instances/instance1/bifoundation/OracleBIServerComponent/coreapplication_obis1/repository`. Make sure it is copied in binary mode.

Notes:

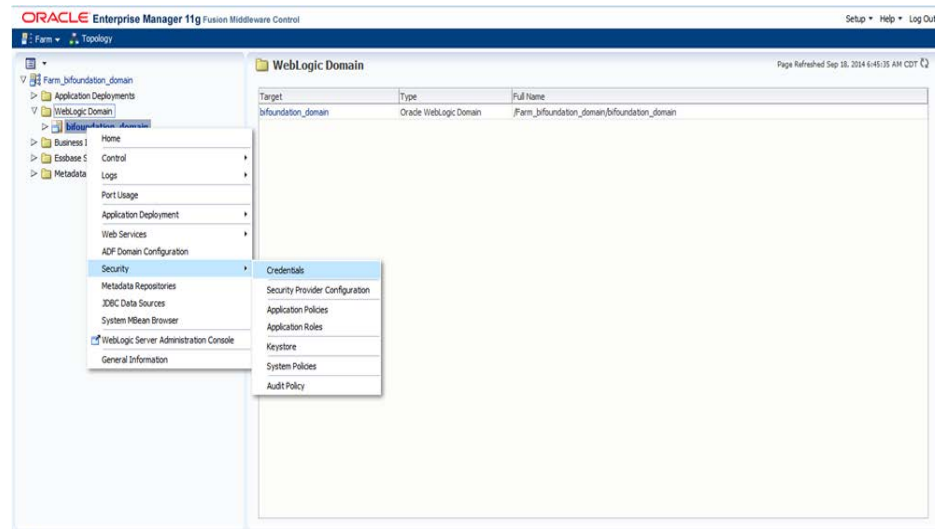
When making any changes to the repository, does it in the offline mode and before saving the changes perform a global consistency check. The global consistency check should not show any errors. Out of the box Operational Insight repository will have some warnings when a Global Consistency Check is done. These warnings do not affect Operational Insight functionality in any way and these are been thoroughly verified.

14. Proceed to the next section to configure the catalog.

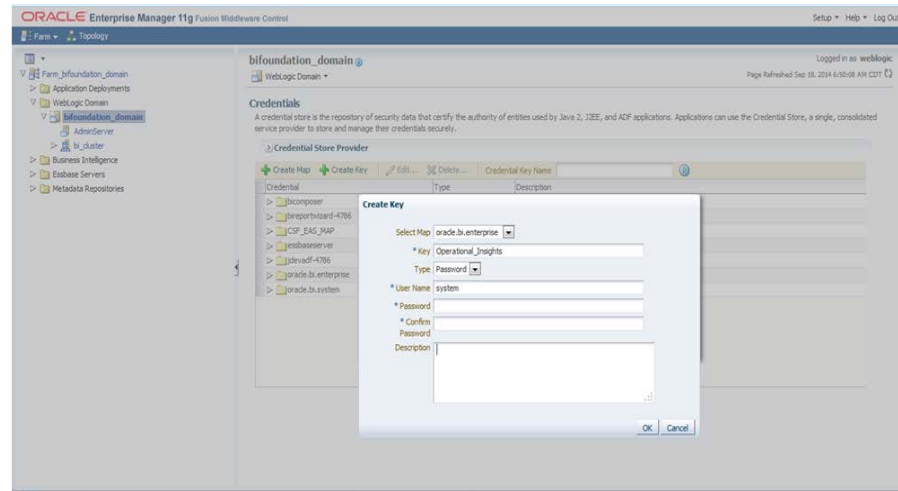
Configure Catalog

To configure the catalog, complete the following steps.

1. The Catalog.zip is located under <INSTALL DIR>/OI/Catalog and unzip the Catalog.zip to obtain the catalog folder.
2. Copy the catalog folder to the below directory<BI_INSTALL_DIRECTORY>/instances/instance1/config/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1/catalog/
3. Update the instanceconfig.xml file to point to Operational_Insights catalog. Instanceconfig.xml is found at <BI_INSTALL_DIRECTORY>/instances/instance1/config/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent\coreapplication_obips1. Change the catalog path within the file to point to Operational_Insights. For example:
<CatalogPath><BI_INSTALL_DIRECTORY>/instances/instance1/bifoundation/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1/catalog/</CatalogPath>
4. Save and close instanceconfig.xml.
5. Log in to WebLogic Enterprise Manager (EM) via web browser with the URL as http://<OBIEE_HOST>:<OBIEE_ADMIN_PORT>/em. Log in with the username and password created during Oracle BI EE installation.
6. Go to WebLogic Domain > right click bifoundation_domain > Security > Credentials as shown in the following screen.



7. Click Create Key.



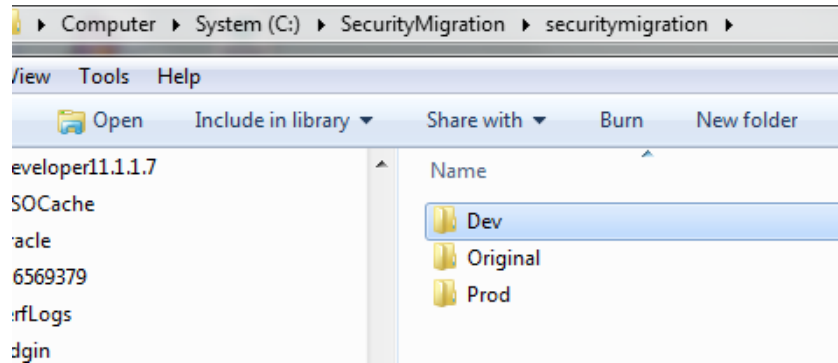
8. For Key, enter repository:Operational Insights. For User Name, enter system. Enter the password of the rpd.
9. Click OK and log out.
10. Start Oracle BI services by executing opmnctl startall from <BI_INSTALL_DIRECTORY>\instances\instance1\bin.
11. Test Operational Insights Installation by opening the browser with the URL as http://<OBIEE_HOST>:<OBIEE_MS_PORT>/analytics with the username and password created during Oracle BI EE installation.

Another alternative for configuring the rpd and catalog through WebLogic, refer to the "Configuring Repositories" chapter in the System Administrator's Guide for Oracle Business Intelligence Enterprise Edition"

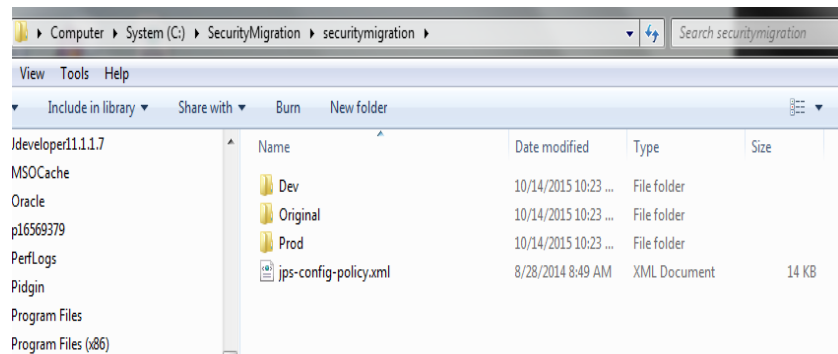
Configure Oracle Retail Operational Insights Roles and Application Roles

Migrating Application Roles using WLST (Recommended approach)

1. To migrate security there is a WLST method called as Migrate Security Store which can move the roles from one system-jazn-data.xml to the other. To do that, first copy the system-jazn-data.xml from Dev instance (<INSTALL DIR>/application/XXXX/OperationalInsights/XML) to the Prod instance (to a temporary directory). In the same way copy the system-jazn-data.xml from the Prod instance to the temporary directory as shown below.



2. Take a backup of all these files before doing the migration. Now, copy the jps-config.xml from any one of the instances (Dev or Prod) to the temporary Directory as shown below. And rename the file to jps-config-policy.xml.



3. Open up the jps-config-policy.xml. You will notice that this file contains all the details about all the stores in the environment. Now, for policy migration, we need to basically use this file to point to the locations of the Dev and Prod (source & target) system-jazn-data.xml files. Also, since we are doing only policy migration, we do not need the other store related tags within this file. Remember that we are modifying only a copy of the jps-config.xml. This copy file will be used only for migration. The modified file is given below

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
```

```
<jpsConfig xmlns="http://xmlns.oracle.com/oracleas/schema/11/jps-
config-11_1.xsd" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-
instance" schema-major-version="11" schema-minor-version="1"
xsi:schemaLocation="http://xmlns.oracle.com/oracleas/schema/11/jps-
config-11_1.xsd jps-config-11_1.xsd">
```

```
<property name="oracle.security.jps.jaas.mode" value="off"/>
  <property name="oracle.security.jps.enterprise.user.class"
value="weblogic.security.principal.WLSUserImpl"/>
  <property name="oracle.security.jps.enterprise.role.class"
value="weblogic.security.principal.WLSGroupImpl"/>
  <propertySets>
    <propertySet name="saml.trusted.issuers.1">
      <property name="name" value="www.oracle.com"/>
    </propertySet>
    <propertySet name="trust.provider.embedded">
```

```

<property name="trust.provider.className"
value="oracle.security.jps.internal.trust.provider.embedded
.EmbeddedProviderImpl"/>
    <property name="trust.clockSkew" value="60"/>
    <property name="trust.token.validityPeriod" value="1800"/>
    <property name="trust.token.includeCertificate"
value="false"/>
    </propertySet>
    </propertySets>
<serviceProviders>
    <serviceProvider type="CREDENTIAL_STORE" name="credstoressp"

class="oracle.security.jps.internal.credstore.ssp.SspCredentialStorePro
vider">
        <description>SecretStore-based CSF Provider</description>
    </serviceProvider>
    <serviceProvider type="IDENTITY_STORE" name="idstore.ldap.provider"

class="oracle.security.jps.internal.idstore.ldap.LdapIdentityStoreProvi
der">
        <description>LDAP-based IdentityStore
Provider</description>
    </serviceProvider>
    <serviceProvider type="IDENTITY_STORE" name="idstore.xml.provider"
class="oracle.security.jps.internal.idstore.xml.XmlIdentityStoreProvide
r">
        <description>XML-based IdentityStore Provider</description>
    </serviceProvider>
    <serviceProvider type="POLICY_STORE"
name="policystore.xml.provider"
class="oracle.security.jps.internal.policystore.xml.XmlPolicyStoreProvi
der">
        <description>XML-based PolicyStore Provider</description>
    </serviceProvider>
    <serviceProvider type="PDP" name="pdp.service.provider"
class="oracle.security.jps.az.internal.runtime.provider.PDPServiceProvi
der">
        <description>Runtime PDP Service Provider</description>
    </serviceProvider>
    <serviceProvider type="LOGIN" name="jaas.login.provider"
class="oracle.security.jps.internal.login.jaas.JaasLoginServiceProvider">
        <description>This is Jaas Login Service Provider and is used to
configure login module service instances</description>
    </serviceProvider>
    <serviceProvider type="KEY_STORE" name="keystore.provider"
class="oracle.security.jps.internal.keystore.KeyStoreProvider">
        <description>PKI Based Keystore Provider</description>
        <property name="provider.property.name" value="owsm"/>
    </serviceProvider>
    <serviceProvider type="AUDIT" name="audit.provider"
class="oracle.security.jps.internal.audit.AuditProvider">
        <description>Audit Service</description>
    </serviceProvider>
    <serviceProvider type="TRUST" name="trust.provider"
class="oracle.security.jps.internal.trust.TrustServiceProvider">
        <description>Trust Service</description>
    </serviceProvider>
    <serviceProvider type="ATTRIBUTE" name="attribute.provider"
class="oracle.security.jps.internal.attribute.impl.AttributeServiceProvide
rImpl">
        <description>Attribute Service Provider</description>
    </serviceProvider>
</serviceProviders>

```

```

        <serviceInstances>
        <serviceInstance name="credstore" provider="credstoressp"
location="./">
            <description>File Based Credential Store Service
            Instance</description>
        </serviceInstance>
        <serviceInstance name="bootstrap.credstore" provider="credstoressp"
location="./bootstrap">
            <description>Bootstrap Credential Store Service
            Instance</description>
            <property name="location" value="./bootstrap"/>
        </serviceInstance>
        <serviceInstance name="bootstrap.credstore.local"
provider="credstoressp" location="{domain.home}/opss/local">
            <description>Local Bootstrap Credential Store Service
            Instance</description>
            <property name="location"
value="{domain.home}/opss/local"/>
        </serviceInstance>
        <serviceInstance name="idstore.ldap"
provider="idstore.ldap.provider">
            <description>LDAP Identity Store Service
            Instance</description>
            <property name="idstore.config.provider"
value="oracle.security.jps.wls.internal.idstore.WlsLdapIdStoreConfi
gProvider"/>
            <property name="CONNECTION_POOL_CLASS"
value="oracle.security.idm.providers.stdldap.JNDIPool"/>
        </serviceInstance>
        <serviceInstance name="idstore.xml" provider="idstore.xml.provider"
location="./system-jazn-data.xml">
            <description>File Based Identity Store Service
            Instance</description>
            <property name="subscriber.name" value="jazn.com"/>
        </serviceInstance>
        <serviceInstance name="srcpolicystore.xml"
provider="policystore.xml.provider"location="<path to /system-jazn-data.xml>">
            <description>File Based Policy Store Service
            Instance</description>
        </serviceInstance>
        <serviceInstance
name="policystore.xml"provider="policystore.xml.provider"
location="<path to /system-jazn-data.xml>">
            <description>File Based Policy Store Service
            Instance</description>
        </serviceInstance>
        <serviceInstance name="pdp.service"
provider="pdp.service.provider">
            <description>Runtime PDP service instance</description>
        </serviceInstance>
        <serviceInstance name="keystore" provider="keystore.provider"
location="./default-keystore.jks">
            <description>Default JPS Keystore Service</description>
            <property name="keystore.provider.type" value="file"/>
            <property name="keystore.file.path" value="."/>
            <property name="keystore.type" value="JKS"/>
            <property name="keystore.csf.map"
value="oracle.wsm.security"/>
            <property name="keystore.pass.csf.key" value="keystore-csf-
key"/>
            <property name="keystore.sig.csf.key" value="sign-csf-
key"/>
            <property name="keystore.enc.csf.key" value="enc-csf-key"/>

```

```

        </serviceInstance>
        <serviceInstance name="audit" provider="audit.provider"
location="./audit-      store.xml">
            <description>Audit Service</description>
            <property name="audit.filterPreset" value="None"/>
            <property name="audit.maxDirSize" value="0"/>
            <property name="audit.maxFileSize" value="104857600"/>
            <property name="audit.timezone" value="utc"/>
            <property name="audit.loader.jndi" value="jdbc/AuditDB"/>
            <property name="audit.loader.interval" value="15"/>
            <property name="audit.loader.repositoryType" value="File"/>
            <property name="auditstore.type" value="file"/>
        </serviceInstance>
        <serviceInstance name="trust" provider="trust.provider">
            <description>Trust Service</description>
            <extendedProperty>
                <name>trust.providers</name>
                <values>
                    <value>trust.provider.embedded</value>
                </values>
            </extendedProperty>
        </serviceInstance>
        <serviceInstance name="saml.loginmodule"
provider="jaas.login.provider">
            <description>SAML Login Module</description>
            <property name="loginModuleClassName"
value="oracle.security.jps.internal.jaas.module.saml.JpsSAMLLoginMo
dule"/>
            <property name="jaas.login.controlFlag" value="REQUIRED"/>
            <propertySetRef ref="saml.trusted.issuers.1"/>
        </serviceInstance>

        <serviceInstance name="saml2.loginmodule"
provider="jaas.login.provider">
            <description>SAML2 Login Module</description>
            <property name="loginModuleClassName"
value="oracle.security.jps.internal.jaas.module.saml.JpsSAML2LoginM
odule"/>
            <property name="jaas.login.controlFlag" value="REQUIRED"/>
            <propertySetRef ref="saml.trusted.issuers.1"/>
        </serviceInstance>
        <serviceInstance name="krb5.loginmodule"
provider="jaas.login.provider">
            <description>Kerberos Login Module</description>
            <property name="loginModuleClassName"
value="com.sun.security.auth.module.Krb5LoginModule"/>
            <property name="jaas.login.controlFlag" value="REQUIRED"/>
            <property name="storeKey" value="true"/>
            <property name="useKeyTab" value="true"/>
            <property name="doNotPrompt" value="true"/>
            <property name="keyTab" value="./krb5.keytab"/>
            <property name="principal"
value="HOST/localhost@EXAMPLE.COM"/>
        </serviceInstance>
        <serviceInstance name="digest.authenticator.loginmodule"
provider="jaas.login.provider">
            <description>Digest Authenticator Login
Module</description>
            <property name="loginModuleClassName"
value="oracle.security.jps.internal.jaas.module.digest.DigestLoginM
odule"/>
            <property name="jaas.login.controlFlag" value="REQUIRED"/>
        </serviceInstance>

```

```

        <serviceInstance name="certificate.authenticator.loginmodule"
        provider="jaas.login.provider">
            <description>X509 Certificate Login Module</description>
            <property name="loginModuleClassName"
value="oracle.security.jps.internal.jaas.module.x509.X509LoginModul
e"/>
            <property name="jaas.login.controlFlag" value="REQUIRED"/>
        </serviceInstance>
        <serviceInstance name="wss.digest.loginmodule"
provider="jaas.login.provider">
            <description>WSS Digest Login Module</description>
            <property name="loginModuleClassName"
value="oracle.security.jps.internal.jaas.module.digest.WSSDigestLog
inModule"/>
            <property name="jaas.login.controlFlag" value="REQUIRED"/>
        </serviceInstance>
        <serviceInstance name="user.authentication.loginmodule"
provider="jaas.login.provider">
            <description>User Authentication Login Module</description>
            <property name="loginModuleClassName"
value="oracle.security.jps.internal.jaas.module.authentication.JpsU
serAuthenticationLoginModule"/>
            <property name="jaas.login.controlFlag" value="REQUIRED"/>
        </serviceInstance>
        <serviceInstance name="user.assertion.loginmodule"
provider="jaas.login.provider">
            <description>User Assertion Login Module</description>
            <property name="loginModuleClassName"
value="oracle.security.jps.internal.jaas.module.assertion.JpsUserAs
sertionLoginModule"/>
            <property name="jaas.login.controlFlag" value="REQUIRED"/>
        </serviceInstance>
        <serviceInstance name="attribute" provider="attribute.provider">
            <description>Attribute Service Instance</description>
            <property name="attribute.expire.time.seconds"
value="86400"/>
        </serviceInstance>
        <serviceInstance name="idstore.loginmodule"
provider="jaas.login.provider">
            <description>Identity Store Login Module</description>
            <property name="loginModuleClassName"
value="oracle.security.jps.internal.jaas.module.idstore.IdStoreLogi
nModule"/>
            <property name="jaas.login.controlFlag" value="REQUIRED"/>
        </serviceInstance>
    </serviceInstances>
    <jpsContexts default="default">
        <jpsContext name="default">
            <serviceInstanceRef ref="credstore"/>
            <serviceInstanceRef ref="keystore"/>
            <serviceInstanceRef ref="policystore.xml"/>
            <serviceInstanceRef ref="audit"/>
            <serviceInstanceRef ref="trust"/>
            <serviceInstanceRef ref="pdp.service"/>
            <serviceInstanceRef ref="attribute"/>
            <serviceInstanceRef ref="idstore.ldap"/>
        </jpsContext>
        <jpsContext name="bootstrap_credstore_context">
            <serviceInstanceRef ref="bootstrap_credstore"/>
        </jpsContext>
        <jpsContext
name="oracle.security.jps.fmw.authenticator.DigestAuthenticator">
            <serviceInstanceRef ref="digest.authenticator.loginmodule"/>

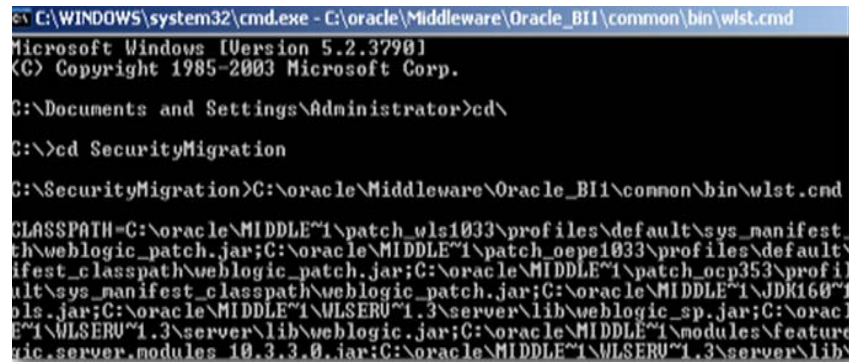
```

```

        </jpsContext>
    </jpsContext>
    name="oracle.security.jps.fmw.authenticator.BasicAuthenticator">
        <serviceInstanceRef ref="idstore.loginmodule"/>
    </jpsContext>
    <jpsContext name="X509CertificateAuthentication">
        <serviceInstanceRef
ref="certificate.authenticator.loginmodule"/>
    </jpsContext>
    <jpsContext name="SAML">
        <serviceInstanceRef ref="saml.loginmodule"/>
    </jpsContext>
    <jpsContext name="bootstrap_credstore_context_local">
        <serviceInstanceRef ref="bootstrap.credstore.local"/>
    </jpsContext>
    <jpsContext name="sourceFileStore">
        <serviceInstanceRef ref="srcpolicystore.xml"/>
    </jpsContext> <jpsContext name="targetFileStore">
        <serviceInstanceRef ref="policystore.xml"/>
    </jpsContext>
    </jpsContexts>
</jpsConfig>

```

4. Navigate to the temporary directory from the command prompt and initialize the WLST using the following command:



```

C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe - C:\oracle\Middleware\Oracle_BI1\common\bin\wlst.cmd
Microsoft Windows [Version 5.2.3790]
(C) Copyright 1985-2003 Microsoft Corp.

C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator>cd\
C:\>cd SecurityMigration
C:\SecurityMigration>C:\oracle\Middleware\Oracle_BI1\common\bin\wlst.cmd
CLASSPATH=C:\oracle\MIDDLE~1\patch_wls1033\profiles\default\sys_manifest_
th\weblogic_patch.jar;C:\oracle\MIDDLE~1\patch_oepe1033\profiles\default\
ifest_classpath\weblogic_patch.jar;C:\oracle\MIDDLE~1\patch_ocp353\profil
ult\sys_manifest_classpath\weblogic_patch.jar;C:\oracle\MIDDLE~1\JDK160~1
ols.jar;C:\oracle\MIDDLE~1\WLSEU~1.3\server\lib\weblogic_sp.jar;C:\orac
E~1\WLSEU~1.3\server\lib\weblogic.jar;C:\oracle\MIDDLE~1\modules\feature
tic.server.modules_10.3.3.0.jar;C:\oracle\MIDDLE~1\WLSEU~1.3\server\lib\

```

5. In WLST, application role migration can be done even in offline mode. So, effectively there is no need to connect to the WebLogic admin server. In offline interactive mode, fire the following command.

```

migrateSecurityStore(type="appPolicies", srcApp="obi",
configFile="C:/SecurityMigration/jps-config-policy.xml",
src="sourceFileStore", dst="targetFileStore", overwrite="false")

```

If you already have custom roles defined and wanted to update the existing jazn settings with the Oracle Retail Operational Insights specific roles, then you copy the Oracle Retail Operational Insights application roles manually into the jazn file.

For example:

Existing Jazn File:

```
<app-role>
  <name>UserDefinedRole</name>
  <display-name>Custom User Defined Role</display-
name>
  <class>oracle.security.jps.service.policystore.Appli
cationRole</class>
  <members>
    <member>
      <class>weblogic.security.principal.WL
SGroupImpl</class>
      <name>UserGroups</name>
    </member>
  </members>
</app-role>
</app-roles>
```

Now from the packaged system-jazn-data.xml file, copy the Oracle Retail Operational Insights application into your existing jazn file. The text in italics below is one of the application roles packaged with Oracle Retail Oracle Operational Insights for example.

```
<app-role>
  <name>UserDefinedRole</name>
  <display-name>Custom User Defined Role</display-
name>
  <class>oracle.security.jps.service.policystore.Appli
cationRole</class>
  <members>
    <member>
      <class>weblogic.security.principal.WLSGroupI
mpl</class>
      <name>UserGroups</name>
    </member>
  </members>
</app-role>

<app-role>
  <name>Auditor Manager</name>
  <display-name>BI Auditor Manager</display-name>
  <guid>57B470702E7211E48F37AF2A78D27375</guid>
  <class>oracle.security.jps.service.policystore.ApplicationRole</class>
  <members>
    <member>
      <class>weblogic.security.principal.WLSGroupImpl</class>
      <name>AUDITOR_MANAGER_JOB</name>
    </member>
    <member>
      <class>oracle.security.jps.service.policystore.ApplicationRole</class>
      <name>BIConsumer</name>
      <guid>C3CC60E3FB7A11E3BFA201D53921A1EC</guid>
    </member>
  </members>
</app-role>
```

For information regarding creating users, user groups, security roles, permissions and privileges refer to the *Oracle BI EE Security Guide*.

If you are using WLST to migrate Security, refer to the section below.

Language Selection with SSO

See the "Enabling SSO Authentication" chapter in the Oracle BI EE Security Guide for more information about configuration changes.

Operational Insights dashboards and reports display the same language as ReSA/REIM/Alloc by accepting the Lang parameter from the Respective system.

Operational Insights Configuration

- Operating System
RPD_post_install.txt which contain password to protect Operational Insights OBIEE code should be owned by Operational Insight unix user and installed with 600 permission. Password in Oracle BI EE should be changed after installation is done.
- Oracle BI EE Server
Operational Insights Oracle BI EE metadata files (rpd, catalog, and translation) should be owned by Operational Insights system administrator and installed with 750 permissions.

Infrastructure/Middleware

- Jdbc connection
Oracle database access through Oracle BI EE can be secured by using a Jdbc connection. The Jdbc connection setup is provided in rpd file. User needs to provide database login credential in the rpd file. The database login credential is stored securely through Oracle BI EE.

Operational Insights Security Role

Operational Insights provides role based security in the current release. The access permission of Operational Insights logical tables for each security role has been defined in Operational Insights rpd file. Within these roles, the user has the privilege to access every subject area of Operational Insights. It is designed for client's testing, developing, or similar non-business activities. Due to the extent of access associated with this role, it should be used cautiously. See the Oracle Retail Merchandising Security Guide for additional information on the Operational Insights security role.

Application Server

- Ensure Restrictive Access Control
Operational Insights provides security roles to ensure restrictive access at object level. WebLogic application server is used to create and maintain these application roles. The definition of roles and the mapping of roles and user groups are stored in system-jazn-data.xml file.

Post Installation Tasks and Configuration

The Oracle BI EE environment has to be configured for enabling Operational Insights. Please follow the steps to configure the Oracle BI EE environment for Operational Insights.

Enable the Oracle BI EE Content to be Displayed in IFrame

The Oracle BI EE content is not allowed to be displayed in IFrame by default. Please enable the Oracle BI EE content to be displayed in IFrame using the following step.

Edit the instanceconfig.xml file at the following location

```
<OBIEE_ORACLE_HOME>/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/config/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1
```

Add the following under the <Security></Security> section in the instanceconfig.xml file.

```
<InIFrameRenderingMode>allow</InIFrameRenderingMode>
```

Restart opmnctl.

Please note that the <InIFrameRenderingMode> tag has to be inside the Security section. Otherwise, you could encounter an issue with the Presentation Server failing to start.

Configure Charts /Charts/to use HTML5

In order to enable charts to use HTML5 instead of Flash, please modify instanceconfig.xml file at the following location

```
<OBIEE_ORACLE_HOME>/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/config/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1
```

Add below tags under <views> </views>

```
<Charts>
  <DefaultWebImageType>html5</DefaultWebImageType>
  <MaxVisibleColumns>2000</MaxVisibleColumns>
  <MaxVisiblePages>1000</MaxVisiblePages>
  <MaxVisibleRows>2000</MaxVisibleRows>
  <MaxVisibleSections>25</MaxVisibleSections>
</Charts>
```

Restart opmnctl.

Enable EVALUATE Function in Oracle BI EE

In order to enable the Evaluate function in OBIEE, follow the step below.

Edit the NQSCfg.INI file, located at

```
<OBIEE_ORACLE_HOME>/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/config/OracleBI ServerComponent/coreapplication_obis1
```

This is what you will see by default in the config file

```
# EVALUATE_SUPPORT_LEVEL:  
# 1: evaluate is supported for users with manageRepositories permssion  
# 2: evaluate is supported for any user.  
# other: evaluate is not supported if the value is anything else.  
EVALUATE_SUPPORT_LEVEL = 0;
```

Change the parameter EVALUATE_SUPPORT_LEVEL to 2 as follows.

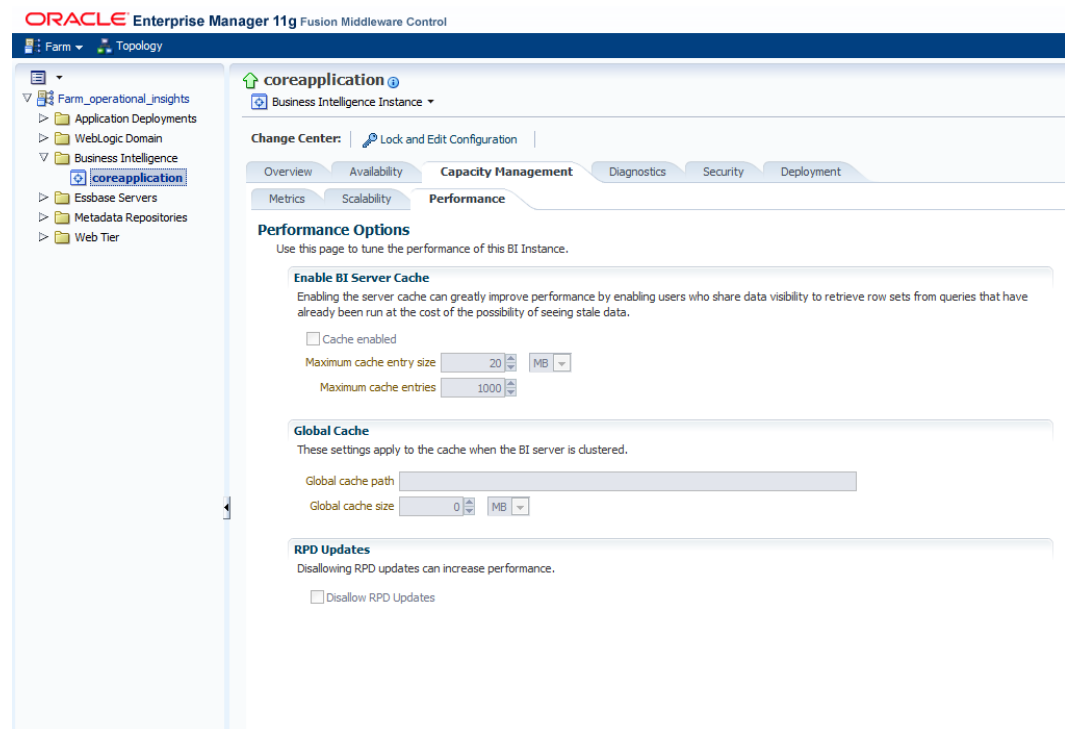
```
# EVALUATE_SUPPORT_LEVEL:  
# 1: evaluate is supported for users with manageRepositories permssion  
# 2: evaluate is supported for any user.  
# other: evaluate is not supported if the value is anything else.  
EVALUATE_SUPPORT_LEVEL = 2;
```

Save and restart the BI Server.

Disable Cache in Oracle BI EE

The Oracle BI EE cache needs to be disabled to ensure that any saved changes on the Oracle Retail Application are reflected immediately in the Operational Insights reports which are embedded in the Oracle Retail Application screens. To disable cache in Oracle BI EE follow the steps below.

1. Log in to the WebLogic Enterprise Manager (EM) via web browser with the URL as `http://<OBIEE_HOST>:<OBIEE_ADMIN_PORT>/em`. Log in with the username and password created during Oracle BI EE installation.
2. Go to Business Intelligence > coreapplication > Capacity Management > Performance as shown in the following screen.



3. Click on 'Lock & Edit Configuration'.

-
4. Uncheck the 'Cache enabled' checkbox as shown above. Click on Apply button on the top right of the page and then click on Activate Changes. Once the changed configuration activated, restart the Oracle BI Server.
 5. Navigate to the path
<OBIEE_ORACLE_HOME>/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/config/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1
 6. Take a backup of the 'instanceconfig.xml' file and add the below mention code in between the <ServerInstance> </ServerInstance> tag of the instanceconfig.xml file.

```
<Cache>
<Query>
<MaxEntries>100</MaxEntries>
<MaxExpireMinutes>1</MaxExpireMinutes>
<MinExpireMinutes>1</MinExpireMinutes>
<MinUserExpireMinutes>1</MinUserExpireMinutes>
</Query>
</Cache>
```
 7. Once the above code is added in the instanceconfig.xml file, restart all the OPMN Instances.

Deploy Operational Insights Skin and Styles

1. Create a web application called 'analyticsRes' in the Oracle BI EE environment. Please open the document (Doc ID 1277311.1) on the Oracle Support website <http://support.oracle.com> and download the white paper 'Customizing Oracle Business Intelligence Enterprise Edition 11g'. Refer to the section 'Exposing a Static Directory in WebLogic Server' to enable the analyticsRes application on the Oracle BI EE WebLogic Server.

Note: The directory
ORACLE_INSTANCE/bifoundation/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1/analyticsRes
mentioned in the document refers to
<OBIEE_ORACLE_HOME>/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/bifoundation/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1/analyticsRes

2. Copy the OI_Custom_Style.zip from <INSTALL_DIRECTORY>/OI/CSS location and unzip. OI_Custom_Style.zip contains Operational Insights Custom Styles and Skins.
The unzipped directory will have an OI_Custom_Style folder. The OI_Custom_Style folder includes the following four directories.
 - s_skyros_custom
 - sk_skyros_custom
 - customMessages
 - oicustomjs
3. Copy the above Four directories to the location mentioned below. If the below location already has these directories then remove those directories first before copying the above directories.
<OBIEE_ORACLE_HOME>/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/bifoundation/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1/analyticsRes

Once the directories have been copied to the above location, please stop and start the 'anayticsRes' application from the WebLogic console to ensure that the new resources are available.

4. Modify the instanceconfig.xml under the location
<BI_INSTALL_DIRECTORY>/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/config/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1
to enable the Operational Insights skins and styles. The code below should be added between the <ServerInstance> </ServerInstance> tag of the instanceconfig.xml file.

```
<UI>
  <DefaultStyle>skyros_custom</DefaultStyle>
  <DefaultSkin>skyros_custom</DefaultSkin>
</UI>
<URL>
  <CustomerResourcePhysicalPath><BI_INSTALL_DIRECTORY>/instances/<INSTANC
E_NAME>/bifoundation/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication
_obips1/analyticsRes</CustomerResourcePhysicalPath>
  <CustomerResourceVirtualPath>/analyticsRes</CustomerResourceVirtualPath>
</URL>
```

Example:

```
<Table>
<!--This Configuration setting is managed by Oracle Enterprise Manager
Fusion Middleware Control-->
<DefaultRowsDisplayedInDelivery>75</DefaultRowsDisplayedInDelivery>
<!--This Configuration setting is managed by Oracle Enterprise Manager
Fusion Middleware Control-->
<DefaultRowsDisplayedInDownload>2500</DefaultRowsDisplayedInDownload>
<MaxCells>4000000</MaxCells>
<MaxVisibleRows>140000</MaxVisibleRows>
</Table>
```

```
<UI>
<DefaultStyle>skyros_custom</DefaultStyle>
<DefaultSkin>skyros_custom</DefaultSkin>
</UI>
```

```
<URL>
```

```
<!-- CustomerResourcePhysicalPath is a tag that specifies the actual
directory name-->
```

```
<CustomerResourcePhysicalPath>/u00/webadmin/products/wls_obiee_oi/instance
s/instance1/bifoundation/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplica
tion_obips1/analyticsRes</CustomerResourcePhysicalPath>
<!-- CustomerResourceVirtualPath provides the URLPrefix that will be added
for sourcing all the files-->
```

```
<CustomerResourceVirtualPath>/analyticsRes</CustomerResourceVirtualPath>
```

```
</URL>
```

```
<Catalog>
  <UpgradeAndExit>>false</UpgradeAndExit>
  <Validate>OnStartup</Validate>
  <ValidateItems>None</ValidateItems>
  <ValidateLinks>None</ValidateLinks>
  <ValidateAccounts>Clean</ValidateAccounts>
  <ValidateHomes>None</ValidateHomes>
<!--<UpdateAccountGUIDs>UpdateAndExit</UpdateAccountGUIDs>-->
```

```
<!--This Configuration setting is managed by Oracle Enterprise Manager
Fusion Middleware Control--><EnableMultiTenancy>false</EnableMultiTenancy>
</Catalog>
```

Note: The attribute CustomerResourcePhysicalPath should point to the absolute path of the analyticsRes directory on that machine.

Create Symbolic Link to analyticsRes Directory

This step is required for the custom resources to be available to the Oracle BI EE Presentations Services connection when using the StaticResourceMode as Auto. Please create a symbolic link as follows.

1. Change the directory to

```
<OBIEE_ORACLE_HOME>/user_projects/domains/<DOMAIN_NAME>/servers/
bi_server1/tmp/_WL_user/analytics_11.1.1/7dezjl/war
$cd
<OBIEE_WEBLOGIC_DOMAIN_HOME>/servers/bi_server1/tmp/_WL_user/analytics_11.1.1/
7dezjl/war
```
2. Verify that you are in the correct directory

```
$ pwd

<OBIEE_WEBLOGIC_DOMAIN_HOME>/servers/bi_server1/tmp/_WL_user/analytics_11.1.1/
7dezjl/war
```
3. Create a symbolic link to the analyticRes directory

```
$ ln -s
<OBIEE_ORACLE_HOME>/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/bifoundation/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1/analyticsRes
```
4. Verify that symbolic link is available.

```
$ ls -ltr
total 28
drwxr----- 5 oraweb dba 4096 Jan 11 18:35 workspace
drwxr----- 3 oraweb dba 4096 Jan 11 18:35 WEB-INF
-rw-r----- 1 oraweb dba 69 Jan 11 18:35 default.jsp
drwxr----- 9 oraweb dba 4096 Jan 11 18:35 res
drwxr----- 31 oraweb dba 4096 Jan 11 18:35 olh
drwxr----- 2 oraweb dba 4096 Jan 11 18:35 META-INF
lrwxrwxrwx 1 oraweb dba 136 May 14 22:45 analyticsRes ->
<OBIEE_ORACLE_HOME>/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/bifoundation/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1/analyticsRes
```

Note: In windows environments, instead of creating a symbolic link, we should manually copy the analyticsRes directory to the following location

```
<OBIEE_WEBLOGIC_DOMAIN_HOME>/servers/bi_server1/tmp/_WL_user/analytics_11.1.1/7dezjl/war
```

If the Oracle BI EE installation uses just the AdminServer then the analyticsRes directory should be copied to the following location

```
<OBIEE_ORACLE_HOME>/user_projects/domains/bifoundation_domain/servers/AdminServer/tmp/_WL_user/analytics_11.1.1/silp1v/war
```

Prepare the Operational Insights Environment for Oracle BI EE Presentation Services Connection

The Operational Insights environment has to be prepared for the Oracle BI EE Presentation Services connection. The Oracle BI EE Presentation Services connection requires a BIImpersonateUser to be created on the Oracle BI EE with the permission to impersonate the logged in user. Please refer to the section '*Credentials for Connecting to the Oracle BI Presentation Catalog*' of the *Fusion Middleware Developer's Guide for Oracle Business Intelligence Enterprise Edition*.

The link to the *Fusion Middleware Developer's Guide for Oracle Business Intelligence Enterprise Edition* for version 11.1.1.9 is

http://docs.oracle.com/cd/E28280_01/bi.1111/e10545/embedding_adf.htm#BIEDV1028

Enable the ADF Contextual Event Action in Oracle BI EE

The ADF Contextual event action is not enabled by default in the Oracle BI EE installation. It has to be manually enabled. Edit the following file in your Oracle BI EE installation

```
<OBIEE_ORACLE_HOME>/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/config/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1/instanceconfig.xml
```

In file instanceconfig.xml add a new ActionLinks attribute between the <ServerInstance> </ServerInstance> tag of the instanceconfig.xml file as follows:

```
<ActionLinks><EnableADFContextualEvent>true</EnableADFContextualEvent></ActionLinks>
```

Restart opmnctl.

Single Sign-On Configuration for Oracle BI EE

When the Oracle BI EE is configured to use Single Sign-On using the Oracle Access Manager and the Oracle Web Tier then the following steps should be followed to enable the Operational Insights custom skins and styles.

Make the Oracle BI EE Static Resources Available to the Oracle Web Tier

We first need to make the Oracle BI EE static resources available to the Oracle Web Tier. If the Oracle Web Tier is installed on the same machine where the Oracle BI EE is installed then the following steps should be followed to make the Oracle BI EE static resources and the Operational Insights skins and styles available to the Oracle Web Tier. If the Oracle Web Tier is installed on a different machine then skip these steps and move to the next list of steps.

1. Go to the Oracle Web Tier installation which has been configured with the current Operational Insights environment for Single Sign-On.
2. Change the directory to the following:

```
<WEB_TIER_ORACLE_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/config/OHS/ohs1/htdocs
$cd
<WEB_TIER_ORACLE_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/config/OHS/ohs1/htdocs
```

3. Verify that you are in the correct directory.

```
$ pwd
<WEB_TIER_ORACLE_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/config/OHS/ohs1/htdocs
```

4. Create symbolic links to the following two directories

- <OBIEE_ORACLE_HOME>/instances/<OBIEE_INSTANCE_NAME>/bifoundation/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1/analyticsRes
- <OBIEE_WEBLOGIC_DOMAIN_HOME>/servers/bi_server1/tmp/_WL_user/analytics_11.1.1/7dezjl/war/res

```
$ ln -s
<OBIEE_ORACLE_HOME>/instances/<OBIEE_INSTANCE_NAME>/bifoundation/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1/analyticsRes

$ ln -s
<OBIEE_WEBLOGIC_DOMAIN_HOME>/servers/bi_server1/tmp/_WL_user/analytics_11.1.1/7dezjl/war/res
```

Note: If the Oracle BI EE installation uses just the AdminServer then the location of the res directory will be

<OBIEE_WEBLOGIC_DOMAIN_HOME>/servers/AdminServer/tmp/_WL_user/analytics_11.1.1/silp1v/war/res

5. Verify that the symbolic links are available.

```
$ ls -ltr
...
lrwxrwxrwx 1 oraweb dba 144 Jun 5 15:51 analyticsRes ->
<OBIEE_ORACLE_HOME>/instances/<OBIEE_INSTANCE_NAME>/bifoundation/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1/analyticsRes
lrwxrwxrwx 1 oraweb dba 65 Jun 5 15:55 res ->
<OBIEE_ORACLE_HOME>/user_projects/domains/<DOMAIN_NAME>/servers/bi_server1/tmp/_WL_user/analytics_11.1.1/7dezjl/war/res
```

6. Verify that you can list these new directories.

```
$ ls res
$ ls analyticsRes
```

7. Restart the Oracle Web Tier.

If the Oracle Web Tier and the Oracle BI EE are installed on different machines then follow the following steps to make the Oracle BI EE static resources and Operations Insights custom skins and styles available to the Oracle Web Tier installation.

1. Go to the Oracle Web Tier installation location which has been configured with the current Operational Insights environment for Single Sign-On.
2. Change the directory to the following

```
<WEB_TIER_ORACLE_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/config/OHS/ohs1/htdocs
$cd
<WEB_TIER_ORACLE_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/config/OHS/ohs1/htdocs
```

3. Make two new directories analyticsRes and res.
\$ mkdir analyticsRes
\$ mkdir res
4. Sudo as root.
\$ sudo ksh
5. Go to the Oracle BI EE installation location in a different terminal window. We want to mount the following two directories from the Oracle BI EE machine to the Oracle Web Tier machine.
 - <OBIEE_ORACLE_HOME>/instances/<OBIEE_INSTANCE_NAME>/bifoundation/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1/analyticsRes
 - <OBIEE_WEBLOGIC_DOMAIN_HOME>/servers/bi_server1/tmp/_WL_user/analytics_11.1.1/7deztj/war/res
6. Change to the directory:
<BI_INSTALL_DIRECTORY>/instances/<OBIEE_INSTANCE_NAME>/bifoundation/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1.

Run the command:

```
chmod -R 777 analyticsRes
$cd
<BI_INSTALL_DIRECTORY>/instances/<OBIEE_INSTANCE_NAME>/bifoundation/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1
$ chmod -R 777 analyticsRes
```

This will ensure that the analyticsRes directory has permissions to be available from the Oracle Web Tier.

7. Change to the directory
<BI_DOMAIN_HOME>/servers/bi_server1/tmp/_WL_user/analytics_11.1.1/7deztj/war/res.

Run the command:

```
chmod -R 777 res
$ cd
<BI_DOMAIN_HOME>/servers/bi_server1/tmp/_WL_user/analytics_11.1.1/7deztj/war/res
$ chmod -R 777 res
```

This will ensure that the res directory has permissions to be available from the Oracle Web Tier.

8. Run the command `df -h` on the Oracle BI EE terminal window to verify if the Oracle BI EE is installed on an existing nfs mount or not. If the Oracle BI EE is installed on an existing nfs mount then we need to get the actual mounted filesystem location.

For Example, let's say we have the Oracle BI EE installed on the machine mspdv171 at the location /u02/product/OBIEE_11.1.1.9. The df -h command displays as follows:

```
$df -h
mspnas401:/export/mspdv171/u02
500G 320G 181G 64% /u02
```

Since, /u02 is already an existing mount from the file system mspnas401:/export/<Host_Name>/u02, our actual OBIEE_ORACLE_HOME location for the mount command will be

mspnas401:/export/<Host_Name>/u02/product/OBIEE_11.1.1.9

9. Go back to the Oracle Web Tier terminal window where you were sudo'ed as root. Run the following command to create a mount to the analyticsRes directory.

```
$mount -t nfs
<OBIEE_ORACLE_HOME>/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/bifoundation/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1/analyticsRes
<WEB_TIER_ORACLE_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/config/OHS/ohs1/htdocs/analyticsRes
```

For example:

```
$mount -t nfs
mspnas401:/export/mspdv171/u02/product/OBIEE_11.1.1.9/instances/instance_oi/bifoundation/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1/analyticsRes
/u00/product/OBIEE_11.1.1.9/Oracle_WT1/instances/instance1/config/OHS/ohs1/htdocs/analyticsRes
```

10. Similarly, create another mount for the res directory as follows:

```
$mount -t nfs
<OBIEE_WEBLOGIC_DOMAIN_HOME>/servers/bi_server1/tmp/_WL_user/analytics_11.1.1/7dezjl/war/res
<WEB_TIER_ORACLE_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/config/OHS/ohs1/htdocs/res
```

For example

```
$mount -t nfs
mspnas401:/export/mspdv171/u02/product/OBIEE_11.1.1.9/user_projects/domains/<DOMAIN_NAME>/servers/bi_server1/tmp/_WL_user/analytics_11.1.1/7dezjl/war/res
/u00/product/OBIEE_11.1.1.9/Oracle_WT1/instances/instance1/config/OHS/ohs1/htdocs/res
```

11. Verify that your mount points are available by using mount -l command.

```
$mount -l
...
mspnas401:/export/mspdv171/u02/product/OBIEE_11.1.1.9/instances/instance_oi/bifoundation/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obips1/analyticsRes on
/scratch/u00/product/OBIEE_11.1.1.9/Oracle_WT1/instances/instance1/config/OHS/ohs1/htdocs/analyticsRes type nfs (rw,addr=10.141.28.81)
mspnas401:/export/mspdv171/u02/product/OBIEE_11.1.1.9/user_projects/domains/<DOMAIN_NAME>/servers/bi_server1/tmp/_WL_user/analytics_11.1.1/7dezjl/war/res on
/scratch/u00/product/OBIEE_11.1.1.9/Oracle_WT1/instances/instance1/config/OHS/ohs1/htdocs/res type nfs (rw,addr=10.141.28.81)
```

-
12. Try listing the analyticsRes and res directories under the htdocs directory on the Oracle Web Tier.

```
$ls
<WEB_TIER_ORACLE_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/config/OHS/ohs1/ht
docs/analyticsRes
$ls
<WEB_TIER_ORACLE_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/config/OHS/ohs1/ht
docs/res
```
 13. Verify that you can go to each directory and list contents using the ls command.

Configure Alias for the Static Resources in the Oracle Web Tier

For the resources in the 'res' directory to be available from Oracle Web Tier we need to configure alias in the Oracle Web Tier. Please follow the following steps to configure the alias.

1. Navigate to the directory

```
<WEB_TIER_ORACLE_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/con
fig/OHS/ohs1.
$ cd
<WEB_TIER_ORACLE_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/<INSTANCE_NAME>/config/OHS/ohs1
```
2. Create a new file called alias.conf in the above directory.

```
$ vi alias.conf
```
3. Add the following entries in the file alias.conf and save the file.

```
Alias /res/v-UBtil9ur9Q4/
"${ORACLE_INSTANCE}/config/${COMPONENT_TYPE}/${COMPONENT_NAME}/htdocs/res/"
Alias /res/v-ISAcow1LJVY/
"${ORACLE_INSTANCE}/config/${COMPONENT_TYPE}/${COMPONENT_NAME}/htdocs/res/"

<Directory
"${ORACLE_INSTANCE}/config/${COMPONENT_TYPE}/${COMPONENT_NAME}/htdocs/res">
    AllowOverride None
    Order allow,deny
    Allow from all
</Directory>
```
4. Edit the file httpd.conf and go to the end of the file.
5. Include the recently created file alias.conf using the following entry.

```
include
"${ORACLE_INSTANCE}/config/${COMPONENT_TYPE}/${COMPONENT_NAME}/alias.conf"
```

Undo the Redirect of analyticsRes to the WebLogic Server

If the analyticRes directory has been configured on the Oracle Web Tier to be redirected to the WebLogic server then please remove the redirection as follows.

1. Change to the directory

```
<WEB_TIER_ORACLE_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/instance1/config/OHS/ohs
1.
```
2. This directory has a file called mod_wl_ohs.conf. Edit this file.
3. Verify that in the file mod_wl_ohs.conf, only the /analytics context root is configured to be redirected to the WebLogic Server. If the /analyticsRes context root is also configured to be redirected to the WebLogic Server then please comment it out or

remove it. We do not want to be redirected to the WebLogic Server to serve the resources under the /analyticsRes context root.

```
<Location /analytics>
    SetHandler weblogic-handler
    WebLogicHost obiee_host
    WeblogicPort obiee_port
</Location>

# <Location /analyticsRes>
#     SetHandler weblogic-handler
#     WebLogicHost obiee_host
#     WeblogicPort obiee_port
# </Location>
```

Make the Static Resources Publicly Available

The static resources are images, css and javascripts. These resources can be made publicly available. Follow the steps below to make them publicly available.

1. Change to the directory
<WEBTIER_ORACLE_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/instance1/config/OHS/ohs1.
2. Edit the file webgate.conf.
3. Inside the file webgate.conf, you will see the following lines:

```
<LocationMatch "/*">
AuthType Oblix
require valid-user
</LocationMatch>
```

The above lines instruct the Oracle Web Tier to route any request to the Oracle Access Manager for authentication. Add the following lines after the above lines.

```
<LocationMatch "/analyticsRes/*">
Satisfy any
</LocationMatch>
```

```
<LocationMatch "/res/*">
Satisfy any
</LocationMatch>
```

This means for any request under the /analyticsRes or /res context roots, we do not want to route to Oracle Access Manager for authentication. The resources under these context roots can be served to users without any authentication.

Enable Caching and Compression of the Oracle BI EE Static Resources

The Oracle BI EE static resources like css and javascripts can be compressed by the Oracle Web Tier to optimize the Oracle BI EE performance. We will use the mod_expire and mod_deflate modules of the Oracle Web Tier to enable the browser caching and compression of the Oracle BI EE static resources.

The mod_expire module controls the setting of the Expires HTTP header and the max-age directive of the Cache-Control HTTP header in server responses. These HTTP headers are an instruction to the browser about the document's validity and persistence. If cached, the document may be fetched from the cache rather than from the source until this time has passed. After that, the cache copy is considered expired and invalid, and a new copy must be obtained from the source. The mod_deflate module provides the DEFLATE

output filter that allows output from the Oracle Web Tier to be compressed before being sent to the client over the network.

Please follow the following steps to enable the browser caching of the Oracle BI EE static resources.

1. Edit the httpd.conf file located in the location
<WEB_TIER_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/instance1/config/OHS/ohs1.
2. Verify that the following line has been uncommented.
LoadModule expires_module "\${ORACLE_HOME}/ohs/modules/mod_expires.so"
3. Go to the end of the file httpd.conf and add the following line:
include
"\${ORACLE_INSTANCE}/config/\${COMPONENT_TYPE}/\${COMPONENT_NAME}/expire.conf"
4. Under the location
<WEB_TIER_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/instance1/config/OHS/ohs1 create a new file called expire.conf.
5. Add the following lines to the file expire.conf
<IfModule mod_expires.c>
ExpiresActive On
ExpiresByType image/jpg "access plus 60 days"
ExpiresByType image/png "access plus 60 days"
ExpiresByType image/gif "access plus 60 days"
ExpiresByType image/jpeg "access plus 60 days"
ExpiresByType text/css "access plus 1 days"
ExpiresByType image/x-icon "access plus 1 month"
ExpiresByType application/pdf "access plus 1 month"
ExpiresByType audio/x-wav "access plus 1 month"
ExpiresByType audio/mpeg "access plus 1 month"
ExpiresByType video/mpeg "access plus 1 month"
ExpiresByType video/mp4 "access plus 1 month"
ExpiresByType video/quicktime "access plus 1 month"
ExpiresByType video/x-ms-wmv "access plus 1 month"
ExpiresByType application/x-shockwave-flash "access 1 month"
ExpiresByType text/javascript "access plus 1 week"
ExpiresByType application/x-javascript "access plus 1 week"
ExpiresByType application/javascript "access plus 1 week"
</IfModule>

Please follow the following steps to enable compression of the Oracle BI EE static resources in the Oracle Web Tier.

1. Edit the httpd.conf file located in the location
<WEB_TIER_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/instance1/config/OHS/ohs1.
2. Verify that the following line has been uncommented. If the line does not exist then please add it.
LoadModule deflate_module "\${ORACLE_HOME}/ohs/modules/mod_deflate.so"
3. Go to the end of the file httpd.conf and add the following line:
include
"\${ORACLE_INSTANCE}/config/\${COMPONENT_TYPE}/\${COMPONENT_NAME}/deflate.conf"
4. Under the location
<WEB_TIER_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/instance1/config/OHS/ohs1 create a new file called deflate.conf.
5. Add the following lines to the file deflate.conf
<IfModule mod_deflate.c>

```

AddOutputFilterByType DEFLATE text/plain
AddOutputFilterByType DEFLATE text/html
AddOutputFilterByType DEFLATE text/xml
AddOutputFilterByType DEFLATE text/css
AddOutputFilterByType DEFLATE text/javascript
AddOutputFilterByType DEFLATE image/svg+xml
AddOutputFilterByType DEFLATE image/x-icon
AddOutputFilterByType DEFLATE application/xml
AddOutputFilterByType DEFLATE application/xhtml+xml
AddOutputFilterByType DEFLATE application/rss+xml
AddOutputFilterByType DEFLATE application/javascript
AddOutputFilterByType DEFLATE application/x-javascript

DeflateCompressionLevel 9

# Browser specific settings
BrowserMatch ^Mozilla/4 gzip-only-text/html
BrowserMatch ^Mozilla/4\.0[678] no-gzip
BrowserMatch \bMSIE !no-gzip !gzip-only-text/html
BrowserMatch \bOpera !no-gzip

# Setup custom deflate log
DeflateFilterNote Input instream
DeflateFilterNote Output outstream
DeflateFilterNote Ratio ratio

LogFormat "%r" %{outstream}n/%{instream}n (%{ratio}n%)' deflate
# Example of log file
CustomLog logs/deflate_log DEFLATE
</IfModule>

```

Note: The image files like jpg and png are never compressed as they are already in a compressed format and do not provide any benefit by the Oracle Web Tier compression.

6. Once the above steps are completed, restart the Oracle Web Tier.

Verify the Static Resources using the Oracle Web Tier

Clear your browser cache. Verify that you can access the following URLs using the Oracle Web Tier host and port. If the Oracle Web Tier port has not been changed during installation then the default port is 7777.

http://<WEBTIER_HOST>:<WEB_TIER_PORT>/res/siebelbug.gif

http://<WEBTIER_HOST>:<WEB_TIER_PORT>/analyticsRes/s_skyros_custom/answers/database.png

http://<WEBTIER_HOST>:<WEB_TIER_PORT>/res/s_blafp/uicomponents/blafplus.css

Go to the directory

<WEB_TIER_HOME>/Oracle_WT1/instances/instance1/diagnostics/logs/OHS/ohs1.

This directory will have a log file called deflate_log. Edit this file. You will notice that the css file blafplus.css was served using compression.

```
"GET /res/s_blafp/uicomponents/blafplus.css HTTP/1.1" 493/1402 (35%)
```

Configure for In-Context launches of RMS forms

Step 1:

Add the below configuration in ActionFrameworkConfig.xml file located at
<BI_DOMAIN_HOME>
\domains\bifoundation_domain\config\fmwconfig\biinstances\coreapplication.

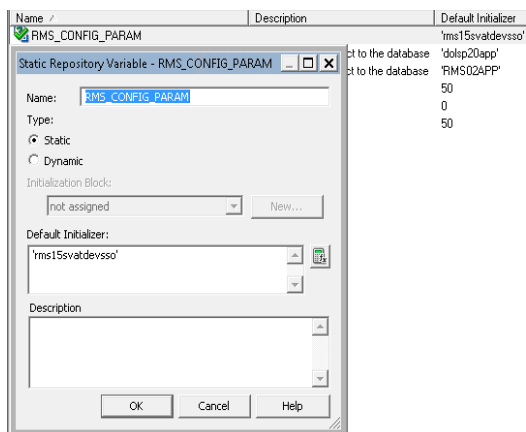
```
<aliases>
  <location-alias>
    <alias>rmshost</alias>
    <actual>http://<RMS_HOST>:<Port></actual>
  </location-alias>
</aliases>
```

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<obi-action-config xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="afconfig.xsd">
  <aliases>
    <location-alias>
      <alias>rmshost</alias>
      <actual>http://<RMS_HOST>:<SSO_PORT></actual>
    </location-alias>
  </aliases>
```

Note: There would already be a <aliases \> and that should be replaced with the above 6 lines of code.

Step 2:

1. Change the value of Rpd Variable.
2. Open Rpd go to Manage -> Variable -> Repository -> Statics
3. And change the value of Repository variable: RMS_CONFIG_PARAM



Note: If RMS URL is as below:

http://<RMS_HOST>:<PORT>/forms/frmservlet?config=<RMS15SSO>

Then the value of "RMS_CONFIG_PARAM" variable will be "RMS15SSO"

Restart Oracle BI EE

After the above steps are completed, restart the Oracle BI EE completely. Please ensure that both the WebLogic servers and opmnctl are stopped and started again.

Validation

Oracle BI EE Analytics should be able to login with RESA/REIM/ALLOC application user and able to view dashboard as well.

Troubleshooting

If any login issue after rpd and catalog migration or Oracle BI EE presentation services is going to init state then please refresh the GUID using the steps below.

Refresh User GUIDs

This task requires that you manually edit the configuration files to instruct the Oracle BI Server and Presentation Services to refresh the GUIDs on restart. Once completed, you edit these files to remove the modification. For information about where to locate Oracle Business Intelligence configuration files, see "Where Configuration Files are Located" in the *Oracle Fusion Middleware System Administrator's Guide for Oracle Business Intelligence Enterprise Edition*.

To refresh user GUIDs, perform the following steps on APPHOST1 and APPHOST2. Note that GUID refresh must occur with only one node operating at a time.

1. Stop Oracle BI Server and Presentation Services on all nodes except where you are refreshing the user GUIDs. For example:

```
cd ORACLE_HOME/admin/instancen/bin
```



```
./opmnctl stopproc ias-component=coreapplication_obips1  
./opmnctl stopproc ias-component=coreapplication_obis1
```
2. Update the FMW_UPDATE_ROLE_AND_USER_REF_GUIDS parameter in NQSConfig.INI:
 - a. Open NQSConfig.INI for editing at:
 - b. `ORACLE_INSTANCE/config/OracleBIServerComponent/coreapplication_obisn`
 - c. Locate the FMW_UPDATE_ROLE_AND_USER_REF_GUIDS parameter and set it to YES, as follows:
 - d. `FMW_UPDATE_ROLE_AND_USER_REF_GUIDS = YES;`
 - e. Save and close the file.
3. Update the Catalog element in instanceconfig.xml:
 - a. Open instanceconfig.xml for editing at:
 - b. `ORACLE_INSTANCE/config/OracleBIPresentationServicesComponent/coreapplication_obipsn`
 - c. Locate the Catalog element and update it as follows:

```
<Catalog>  
<UpgradeAndExit>>false</UpgradeAndExit>  
<UpdateAccountGUIDs>UpdateAndExit</UpdateAccountGUIDs>  
</Catalog>
```
 - d. Save and close the file.
4. Restart the Oracle BI Server and Presentation Services using opmnctl:

```
cd ORACLE_HOME/admin/instancen/bin
```

```
./opmnctl stopproc ias-component=coreapplication_obips1
./opmnctl stopproc ias-component=coreapplication_obis1
./opmnctl startproc ias-component=coreapplication_obis1
```

5. After you confirm that the Oracle BI Server is running, then start Presentation Services:

```
./opmnctl startproc ias-component=coreapplication_obips1
```

Note: The service will come up and go down which is normal.

6. Set the FMW_UPDATE_ROLE_AND_USER_REF_GUIDS parameter in NQSCfg.INI back to NO.

Important: You must perform this step to ensure that your system is secure.

7. Update the Catalog element in instanceconfig.xml to remove the UpdateAccount GUIDs entry.
8. Restart the Oracle Business Intelligence system components again using opmnctl:
- ```
cd ORACLE_HOME/admin/instancen/bin
./opmnctl stopall
./opmnctl startall
```
9. If BISystemUser fails to authenticate is the error in presentation service then follow below procedure. Once the OID provider is set and analytics is not logging in then follow below procedure.
- Shut down all OPMN components  
(`<MW_HOME>/instances/instancen/bin/opmnctl stopall`)
  - Go to WLS Console (`<http://<servername>:7001/console`), Security Realms, myrealm, Users and Groups, Users. Locate the user BISystemUser, and change the password for this user
  - Log on to Enterprise Manager (`http://<servername>:7001/em`), expand Weblogic Domain, right- click bifoundation\_domain, select Security, Credentials.
  - Under the "oracle.bi.system" folder, you will find the system.user credential. Edit this key, and type in the new password you set for the BISystemUser in step 2.
  - Stop the bi\_server1 managed server and the WLS AdminServer
  - Restart whole domain and BI instances.

## Data Migration

ReIM includes a data conversion script that allows you to move old EDI data (reject to table) to the new injector table structure from 14.1.1 to 15.0. This new script and database package includes logic to move data from the old IM\_EDI\_REJECT% table to the new IM\_INJECTOR% tables so that the user can continue working on any documents that were rejected to table before the upgrade.

The script is available in the same directory as other ReIM batch scripts.

### Usage

```
dataConversionEDIUpgrade <db_connect_string> <doc_create_username> <default_loc>
<default_dept> <default_class> <include_date_for_doc_dup_check[Y or N]>
<include_year_for_doc_dup_check[Y or N]> <doc_hdr_qty_req[Y or N]> errpath
```

### Parameters

|                                        |                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| db_connect_string                      | Database connect String                                                                 |
| doc_create_username                    | The batch username (will be used as create_id if at all any document passes validation) |
| default_loc                            | edi.default.location from reim.properties                                               |
| default_dept                           | edi.default.department from reim.properties                                             |
| default_class                          | edi.default.class from reim.properties                                                  |
| include_date_for_doc_dup_check[Y or N] | INCLUDE_DOC_DATE_FOR_DUPLICATE_DOC_CHECK from reim.properties (Y N)                     |
| include_year_for_doc_dup_check[Y or N] | INCLUDE_DOC_YEAR_FOR_DUPLICATE_DOC_CHECK from reim.properties (Y N)                     |
| doc_hdr_qty_req[Y or N]                | document.header.quantity.required from reim.properties (Y N)                            |
| errpath                                | Error File directory                                                                    |

### Error and Restart

The script would create errors in the error path if there were any. The user can rerun the script after correcting the reason for failure.

---

## Locking

If the run is successful, the script creates a lock file which would prevent the user from running the upgrade script again. The user can delete the lock file if they need to override and rerun the script for any reason. (Not recommended, since all the documents which got uploaded to IM% tables from previous runs would get rejected as DUPLICATES)

Since this is a data conversion mechanism, it does not perform a reject to file. Users need to go through the errors in IM\_INJECT\_DOC\_ERROR table to check if there are any documents that were earlier part of IM EDI\_REJECT% tables and have now been classified as reject to file. (FIXABLE = 'N' in IM\_INJECT\_DOC\_ERROR)

# Patching Procedures

## Oracle Retail Patching Process

The patching process for many Oracle Retail products has been substantially revised from prior releases. Automated tools are available to reduce the amount of manual steps when applying patches. To support and complement this automation, more information about the environment is now tracked and retained between patches. This information is used to allow subsequent patches to identify and skip changes which have already been made to the environment. For example, the patching process uses a database manifest table to skip database change scripts which have already been executed.

The enhanced product patching process incorporates the following:

- Utilities to automate the application of Oracle Retail patches to environments.
- Unified patches so that a single patch can be applied against Database, Forms, Java applications, Batch, etc. installations.
- Database and Environment manifests track versions of files at a module level.
- Centralized configuration distinguishes installation types (Database, Forms, Java, Batch, etc.).
- Patch inventory tracks the patches applied to an environment.

These enhancements make installing and updating Oracle Retail product installations easier and reduce opportunities for mistakes. Some of these changes add additional considerations to patching and maintaining Oracle Retail product environments. Additional details on these considerations are found in later sections.

## Supported Products and Technologies

With version 15.0, several products and technologies are supported by the enhanced patching process. The utilities, processes and procedures described here are supported with the following products and listed technologies:

| Product                                          | Supported Technology                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Oracle Retail Merchandising System (RMS)         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Database scripts</li> <li>▪ Batch scripts</li> <li>▪ RETL scripts</li> <li>▪ Data Conversion Scripts</li> <li>▪ Forms</li> <li>▪ BI Publisher Reports</li> </ul> |
| Oracle Retail Warehouse Management System (RWMS) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Database scripts</li> <li>▪ Batch scripts</li> <li>▪ Forms</li> <li>▪ BI Publisher Reports</li> </ul>                                                            |

| Product                                                                                                                          | Supported Technology                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Oracle Retail Price Management (RPM)                                                                                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Database scripts (included with RMS)</li> <li>Java Application</li> <li>Batch scripts</li> </ul> |
| Oracle Retail Invoice Matching (ReIM)                                                                                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Database scripts (included with RMS)</li> <li>Java Application</li> <li>Batch scripts</li> </ul> |
| Oracle Retail Allocation                                                                                                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Database scripts (included with RMS)</li> <li>Java Application</li> <li>Batch scripts</li> </ul> |
| Oracle Retail Sales Audit (ReSA)                                                                                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Database scripts (included with RMS)</li> <li>Java Application</li> </ul>                        |
| Oracle Retail Insights (RI)<br>Previously called Oracle Retail Analytics (RA)                                                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Database scripts</li> </ul>                                                                      |
| Oracle Retail Advanced Science Engine (ORASE)                                                                                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Database scripts</li> <li>Batch scripts</li> </ul>                                               |
| Oracle Retail Data Extractor (RDE)                                                                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Database scripts</li> </ul>                                                                      |
| Oracle Retail Application Admin Console (ORAAC).<br>Previously called Oracle Retail Application Security<br>Role Manager (RASRM) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Java Application</li> </ul>                                                                      |

## Patch Concepts

During the lifecycle of an Oracle Retail environment, patches are applied to maintain your system. This maintenance may be necessary to resolve a specific issue, add new functionality, update to the latest patch level, add support for new technologies, or other reasons.

A patch refers to a collection of files to apply to an environment. Patches could be cumulative, such as the 15.0.1 release, or incremental, such as a hot fix for just a few modules. Patches may contain updates for some or all components of a product installation including database, application code, forms, and batch. In a distributed architecture the same patch may need to be applied to multiple systems in order to patch all of the components. For example, if a patch contains both database and application changes, the patch would need to be applied to both the database server and the application server.

The top-level directory for the installation of an Oracle Retail product is referred to as the RETAIL\_HOME. Underneath RETAIL\_HOME are all of the files related to that product installation, as well as configuration and metadata necessary for the Oracle Retail Patch Assistant to maintain those files. In some cases the runtime application files also exist under RETAIL\_HOME. For example, the compiled RMS forms, compiled RMS batch files, or Java Application batch scripts.

## Patching Utility Overview

Patches are applied and tracked using utilities that are specifically designed for this purpose. The primary utility is described briefly below and additional information is available in later sections.

### Oracle Retail Patch Assistant (ORPatch)

ORPatch is the utility used to apply patches to an Oracle Retail product installation. It is used in the background by the installer when creating a new installation or applying a cumulative patch. It is used directly to apply an incremental patch to an environment.

### Oracle Retail Merge Patch (ORMerge)

ORMerge is a utility to allow multiple patches to be combined into a single patch. Applying patches individually may require some steps to be repeated. Merging multiple patches together allows these steps to be run only once. For example, applying several incremental patches to database packages will recompile invalid objects with each patch. Merging the patches into a single patch before applying them will allow invalid objects to be recompiled only once.

### Oracle Retail Compile Patch (ORCompile)

ORCompile is a utility to compile components of Oracle Retail products outside of a patch. It allows RMS Forms, RMS Batch, and RWMS Forms to be fully recompiled even if no patch has been applied. It also contains functionality to recompile invalid database objects in product schemas.

### Oracle Retail Deploy Patch (ORDeploy)

ORDeploy is a utility to deploy components of Oracle Retail Java products outside of a patch. It allows RPM, ReIM, Allocation and ReSA java applications to be redeployed to WebLogic even if a patch has not been applied. It contains functionality to optionally include or not include Java customizations when redeploying.

## Changes with 15.0

Some products and technologies are supported by the enhanced patching process for the first time in 15.0. In those cases all of the content in this chapter is new with 15.0.

### Renamed Products

For the 15.0 release several products using Orpatch have been renamed. Oracle Retail Analytics (RA) is renamed to Oracle Retail Insights (RI) and Oracle Retail Application Security Role Manager (RASRM) is renamed to Oracle Retail Application Admin Console (ORAAC). The old product names are still used in the underlying Orpatch code, the Orpatch Action names, the Orpatch env\_info.cfg, and the Orpatch wallet paths. Documentation for these products will refer to the new names.

## Patching Considerations

### Patch Types

Oracle Retail produces two types of patches for their products: cumulative and incremental.

### Cumulative Patches

A cumulative patch includes all of the files necessary to patch an environment to a specific level or build a new environment at that level. Examples of cumulative patches would be 15.0.1, 15.0.2, and so on. Cumulative patches come with a standard Oracle Retail installer and so can be applied to an environment with the installer rather than with ORPatch or other utilities.

### Incremental Patches

An incremental patch includes only selected files necessary to address a specific issue or add a feature. Examples of incremental patches would be a hot fix for a specific defect. Incremental patches do not include an installer and must be applied with ORPatch.

## Incremental Patch Structure

An Oracle Retail incremental patch generally contains several files and one or more subdirectories. The subdirectories contain the contents of the patch, while the individual files contain information about the patch and metadata necessary for patching utilities to correctly apply the patch. The most important files in the top-level directory are the README.txt, the manifest files.

### README File

The README.txt file contains information about the incremental patch and how to apply it. This may include manual steps that are necessary before, after or while applying the patch. It will also contain instructions on applying the patch with ORPatch.

### Manifest Files

Each patch contains manifest files which contain metadata about the contents of a patch and are used by ORPatch to determine the actions necessary to apply a patch. Patches should generally be run against all installations a product in an environment, and ORPatch will only apply the changes from the patch that are relevant to that installation.

---

---

**Note:** Cumulative patches use a different patch structure because they include a full installer which will run ORPatch automatically.

---

---

## Version Tracking

The patching infrastructure for 15.0 tracks version information for all files involved with a product installation. The RETAIL\_HOME contains files which track the revision of all files within the RETAIL\_HOME including batch, forms, database, Java archives and other files. In addition, records of database scripts that have been applied to the product database objects are kept within each database schema.

## Apply all Patches with Installer or ORPatch

In order to ensure that environment metadata is accurate all patches must be applied to the Oracle Retail product installation using patching utilities. For cumulative patches this is done automatically by the installer. For incremental patches ORPatch must be used directly. This is especially important if database changes are being applied, in order to ensure that the database-related metadata is kept up-to-date.

## Environment Configuration

A configuration file in \$RETAIL\_HOME/orpatch/config/env\_info.cfg is used to define the details of a specific Oracle Retail environment. This file defines:

- The location of critical infrastructure components such as the ORACLE\_HOME on a database or middleware server.
- The location of Oracle Wallets to support connecting to the database users.
- The type of file processing which is relevant to a particular host. For example, if this is a host where database work should be done, or a host where batch compilation should be done, a host where Java applications should be deployed, etc. This allows a single database, forms and batch patch to be run against all types of hosts, applying only the relevant pieces on each server.
- Other configuration necessary to determine proper behavior in an environment.

## Retained Installation Files

The RETAIL\_HOME location of an Oracle Retail product installation contains all of the files associated with that installation. This can include database scripts, Java files, Forms, Batch, RETL and Data Conversion files as with previous versions and also includes all database scripts. This allows objects to be reloaded during patching, including any necessary dependencies.

## Reloading Content

In order to ensure that database contents and generated files exactly match patched versions, when applying cumulative patches some content is regenerated even if it does not appear to have changed.

On a cumulative patch this includes:

- All re-runnable database content will be reloaded
  - Packages and Procedures
  - Database Types (excluding RIB objects)
  - Control scripts
  - Triggers
  - Webservice jars and packages
  - Form Elements
- All RMS and RWMS forms files will be recompiled
- All RMS batch files will be recompiled

When applying incremental patches, only changed files will be reloaded. However this does not apply to RMS batch, which is fully recompiled with any change.

## Java Hotfixes and Cumulative Patches

When applying cumulative patches to Java applications components with ORPatch, all hotfixes related to base product ear files included with the patch will be rolled back. This increases the likelihood of a successful deployment because hotfixes may not be compatible with updated product ear files, or may already be included with the ear. Before applying a cumulative patch to Java applications, check the patch documentation to determine which hotfixes are not included in the ear. Then work with Oracle Support to obtain compatible versions of the fixes for the updated ear version. In some cases this may be the same hotfix, in which case it can be re-applied to the environment. In other cases a new hotfix may be required.

## Backups

Before applying a patch to an environment, it is extremely important to take a full backup of both the RETAIL\_HOME file system and the Oracle Retail database. Although ORPatch makes backups of files modified during patching, any database changes cannot be reversed. If a patch fails which contains database changes, and cannot be completed, the environment must be restored from backup.

## Disk Space

When patches are applied to an environment, the old version of files which are updated or deleted are backed up to \$RETAIL\_HOME/backups/backup-`<timestamp>`. When applying large patches, ensure there is sufficient disk space on the system where you unzip the patch or the patching process may fail. Up to twice as much disk space as the unzipped patch may be required during patching.

In addition to backups of source files, the existing compiled RMS or RWMS Forms and RMS Batch files are saved before recompilation. These backups may be created during patches:

- Batch 'lib' directory in \$RETAIL\_HOME/oracle/lib/bin-`<timestamp>`
- Batch 'proc' directory in \$RETAIL\_HOME/oracle/proc/bin-`<timestamp>`
- Forms 'toolset' directory in \$RETAIL\_HOME/base/toolset/bin-`<timestamp>`
- Forms 'forms' directory in \$RETAIL\_HOME/base/forms/bin-`<timestamp>`

Periodically both types of backup files can be removed to preserve disk space.

## Patching Operations

### Running ORPatch

ORPatch is used to apply patches to an Oracle Retail product installation. When applying a patch which includes an installer, ORPatch does not need to be executed manually as the installer will run it automatically as part of the installation process. When applying a patch that does not include an installer, ORPatch is run directly.

ORPatch performs the tasks necessary to apply the patch:

- Inspects the patch metadata to determine the patch contents and patch type.
- Reads the environment configuration file to determine which product components exist in this installation.
- Assembles a list of patch actions which will be run on this host to process the patch.
- Executes pre-checks to validate that all patch actions have the necessary configuration to proceed.
- Compares version numbers of files from the patch against the files in the environment.
- Backs up files which will be updated.
- Copies updated files into the installation.
- Loads updated files into database schemas, if applicable.
- Recompiles RMS batch, if applicable.
- Recompiles RMS forms, if applicable.
- Recompiles RWMS forms, if applicable.
- Constructs updated Java archives and deploys them to WebLogic, if applicable
- Updates Java batch files and libraries, if applicable
- Records the patch in the patch inventory.

If a patch does not contain updated files for the database or system, no action may be taken. If a previously failed ORPatch session is discovered, it will be restarted.

### Preparing for Patching

Before applying a patch to your system, it is important to properly prepare the environment.

#### Single Patching Session

It is extremely important that only a single ORPatch session is active against a product installation at a time. If multiple patches need to be applied, you can optionally merge them into a single patch and apply one patch to the environment. Never apply multiple patches at the same time.

#### Shutdown Applications

If a patch updates database objects, it is important that all applications are shutdown to ensure no database objects are locked or in use. This is especially important when applying changes to Oracle Retail Integration Bus (RIB) objects as types in use will not be correctly replaced, leading to “ORA-21700: object does not exist or marked for delete” errors when restarting the RIB.

### Backup Environment

Before applying a patch to an environment, it is important to take a full backup of both the RETAIL\_HOME file system and the retail database. Although ORPatch makes backups of files modified during patching, any database changes cannot be reversed. If a patch which contains database changes fails and cannot be completed, the environment must be restored from backup.

### Log Files

When applying a patch, ORPatch will create a number of log files which contain important information about the actions taken during a patch and may contain more information in the event of problems. Log files are created in the \$RETAIL\_HOME/orpatch/logs directory. Logs should always be reviewed after a patch is applied.

After a patch session the log directory will contain at a minimum an ORPatch log file and may also contain other logs depending on the actions taken. The following table describes logs that may exist.

| Log File                                        | Used For                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| orpatch-<date>-<time>.log                       | Primary ORPatch log file                                                                                                                                             |
| detail_logs/dbsql_<component>/invalids/*        | Details on the errors causing a database object to be invalid                                                                                                        |
| detail_logs/analyze/details                     | Detail logs of files that will be created/updated/removed when a patch is applied                                                                                    |
| detail_logs/compare/details                     | Detail logs of the differences between two sets of environment metadata                                                                                              |
| orpatch_forms_<pid>_child_<num>.log             | Temporary logs from a child process spawned to compile forms in parallel. After the child process completes, the contents are append to the primary orpatch log file |
| detail_logs/forms/rms_frm_toolset/*             | Detail logs of the compilation of each RMS Toolset file                                                                                                              |
| detail_logs/forms/rms_frm_forms/*               | Detail logs of the compilation of each RMS Forms file                                                                                                                |
| detail_logs/rmsbatch/lib/*                      | Detail logs of the compilation of RMS Batch libraries                                                                                                                |
| detail_logs/rmsbatch/proc/*                     | Detail logs of the compilation of RMS Batch programs                                                                                                                 |
| detail_logs/dbsql_rms/rms_db_ws_consumer_jars/* | Detail logs of the loadjava command to install RMS WebService Consumer objects                                                                                       |
| detail_logs/dbsql_rms/rms_db_ws_consumer_libs/* | Detail logs of the loadjava command to install RMS WebService Consumer libraries                                                                                     |

| Log File                                 | Used For                                                    |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| detail_logs/forms/rwms_frm_forms/*       | Detail logs of the compilation of each RWMS Forms file      |
| detail_logs/dbsql_rwms/rwms_db_sp_jars/* | Detail logs of the loadjava command to install RWMS SP jars |
| detail_logs/javaapp_<product>/deploy/*   | Detail logs of the deploy of a Java product                 |

### Unzip Patch Files

Before executing ORPatch, the patch files must be unzipped into a directory. This directory will be passed to ORPatch as the “-s <source directory>” argument on the command-line when applying or analyzing a patch.

### Location of ORPatch

The ORPatch script will be located in \$RETAIL\_HOME/orpatch/bin.

### Command Line Arguments

ORPatch behavior is controlled by several command-line arguments. These arguments may be actions or options. Command and option names can be specified in upper or lower case, and will be converted to upper-case automatically. Arguments to options, for example the source directory patch, will not be modified.

#### ORPatch command-line actions:

| Action         | Description                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| apply          | Tells ORPatch to apply a patch, requires the -s option<br>Example: orpatch apply -s \$RETAIL_HOME/stage/patch123456                                                |
| analyze        | Tells ORPatch to analyze a patch, requires the -s option<br>Example: orpatch analyze -s \$RETAIL_HOME/stage/patch123456                                            |
| lsinventory    | Tells ORPatch to list the inventory of patches that have been applied to this installation                                                                         |
| exportmetadata | Tells ORPatch to extract all metadata information from the environment and create a \$RETAIL_HOME/support directory to contain it. Requires the -expname option.   |
| diffmetadata   | Tells ORPatch to compare all metadata from the current environment with metadata exported from some other environment. Requires the -expname and -srcname options. |
| revert         | Tells ORPatch to revert the files related to a patch, requires the -s option<br>Example: orpatch revert -s \$RETAIL_HOME/backups/backup-09302013-153010            |

---

**Note:** An action is required and only one action can be specified at a time.

---

**ORPatch command-line arguments:**

| Argument        | Valid For Actions                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -s <source dir> | apply<br>analyze                              | Specifies where to find the top-level directory of the patch to apply or analyze. The source directory should contain the manifest.csv and patch_info.cfg files.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| -new            | apply                                         | Forces ORPatch to not attempt to restart a failed ORPatch session                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| -expname        | exportmetadata<br>diffmetadata<br>lsinventory | Defines the top-level name to be used for the export or comparison of environment metadata. When used with lsinventory, it allows an exported inventory to be printed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| -srcname        | diffmetadata                                  | Defines the 'name' to use when referring to the current environment during metadata comparisons.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| -dbmodules      | diffmetadata                                  | When comparing metadata at a module-level, compare the dbmanifest information rather than the environment manifest. This method of comparing metadata is less accurate as it does not include non-database files.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| -jarmodules     | analyze<br>diffmetadata                       | When used with analyze, requests a full comparison of the metadata of Java archives included in the patch versus the metadata of the Java archives in the environment. This behavior is automatically enabled when Java customizations are detected in the environment. Analyzing the contents of Java archives allows for detailed investigation of the potential impacts of installing a new Java ear to an environment with customizations.<br><br>When used with diffmetadata, causes metadata to be compared using jarmanifest information rather than the environment manifest. This provides more detailed information on the exact differences of the content of Java archives, but does not include non-Java files. |
| -selfonly       | apply<br>analyze                              | Only apply or analyze changes in a patch that relate to orpatch itself. This is useful for applying updates to orpatch without applying the entire patch to an environment.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| -s <backup dir> | revert                                        | Specifies the backup from a patch that should be reverted to the environment. This restores only the files modified during the patch, the database must be restored separately or the environment will be out-of-sync and likely unusable.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

**Analyzing the Impact of a Patch**

In some cases, it may be desirable to see a list of the files that will be updated by a patch, particularly if files in the environment have been customized. ORPatch has an 'analyze' mode that will evaluate all files in the patch against the environment and report on the files that will be updated based on the patch.

To run ORPatch in analyze mode, include 'analyze' on the command line. It performs the following actions:

- Identifies files in the environment which the patch would remove.
- Compares version numbers of files in the patch to version numbers of files in the environment.
- Prints a summary of the number of files which would be created, updated or removed.
- Prints an additional list of any files that would be updated which are registered as being customized.
- Prints an additional list of any files which are in the environment and newer than the files included in the patch. These files are considered possible conflicts as the modules in the patch may not be compatible with the newer versions already installed. If you choose to apply the patch the newer versions of modules in the environment will NOT be overwritten.
- If a Java custom file tree is detected, prints a detailed analysis of the modules within Java ear files that differ from the current ear file on the system.
- Saves details of the files that will be impacted in  
\$RETAIL\_HOME/orpatch/logs/detail\_logs/analyze/details.

This list of files can then be used to assess the impact of a patch on your environment.

To analyze a patch, perform the following steps:

1. Log in as the UNIX user that owns the product installation.
2. Set the RETAIL\_HOME environment variable to the top-level directory of your product installation.  
export RETAIL\_HOME=/u00/oretail/15.0/tst
3. Set the PATH environment variable to include the orpatch/bin directory  
export PATH=\$RETAIL\_HOME/orpatch/bin:\$PATH
4. Set the JAVA\_HOME environment variable if the patch contains Java application files.  
export JAVA\_HOME=/u00/oretail/java\_jdk

---

**Note:** If the JAVA\_HOME environment variable is not specified, the value from  
RETAIL\_HOME/orpatch/config/env\_info.cfg will be used.

---

5. Create a staging directory to contain the patch, if it does not already exist.  
mkdir -p \$RETAIL\_HOME/stage
6. Download the patch to the staging directory and unzip it.
7. Execute orpatch to analyze the patch.  
orpatch analyze -s \$RETAIL\_HOME/stage/patch123456
8. Repeat the patch analysis on all servers with installations for this product environment.
9. Evaluate the list(s) of impacted files.

For more information on registering and analyzing customizations, please see the Customization section later in this document.

## Applying a Patch

Once the system is prepared for patching, ORPatch can be executed to apply the patch to the environment. The patch may need to be applied to multiple systems if it updates components that are installed on distributed servers.

To apply a patch, perform the following steps:

1. Log in as the UNIX user that owns the product installation.
2. Set the RETAIL\_HOME environment variable to the top-level directory of your product installation.  
`export RETAIL_HOME=/u00/oretail/15.0/tst`
3. Set the PATH environment variable to include the orpatch/bin directory  
`export PATH=$RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/bin:$PATH`
4. Set the DISPLAY environment variable if the patch contains Forms.  
`export DISPLAY=localhost:10.0`

---

**Note:** If the DISPLAY environment variable is not specified, the value from RETAIL\_HOME/orpatch/config/env\_info.cfg will be used.

---

5. Set the JAVA\_HOME environment variable if the patch contains Java application files.

`export JAVA_HOME=/u00/oretail/java_jdk`

---

**Note:** If the JAVA\_HOME environment variable is not specified, the value from RETAIL\_HOME/orpatch/config/env\_info.cfg will be used.

---

6. Create a staging directory to contain the patch, if it does not already exist.  
`mkdir -p $RETAIL_HOME/stage`
7. Download the patch to the staging directory and unzip it.
8. Review the README.txt included with the patch. If manual steps are specified in the patch, execute those steps at the appropriate time.
9. Shutdown applications.
10. Execute ORPatch to apply the patch.  
`orpatch apply -s $RETAIL_HOME/stage/patch123456`
11. After ORPatch completes, review the log files in \$RETAIL\_HOME/orpatch/logs.
12. Repeat the patch application on all servers with installations for this product environment.
13. Restart applications.

### Restarting ORPatch

If ORPatch is interrupted while applying a patch, or exits with an error, it saves a record of completed work in a restart state file in \$RETAIL\_HOME/orpatch/logs. Investigate and resolve the problem that caused the failure, then restart ORPatch.

By default when ORPatch is started again, it will restart the patch process close to where it left off. If the patch process should **not** be restarted, add '-new' to the command-line of ORPatch.

Please note that starting a new patch session without completing the prior patch may have serious impacts that result in a patch not being applied correctly. For example, if a patch contains database updates and batch file changes and ORPatch is aborted during the load of database objects, abandoning the patch session will leave batch without the latest changes compiled in the installation.

## Listing the Patch Inventory

After a patch is successfully applied by ORPatch the patch inventory in \$RETAIL\_HOME/orpatch/inventory is updated with a record that the patch was applied. This inventory contains a record of the patches applied, the dates they were applied, the patch type and products impacted.

To list the patch inventory, perform the following steps:

1. Log in as the UNIX user that owns the product installation.
2. Set the RETAIL\_HOME environment variable to the top-level directory of your product installation.  
export RETAIL\_HOME=/u00/oretail/15.0/tst
3. Set the PATH environment variable to include the orpatch/bin directory  
export PATH=\$RETAIL\_HOME/orpatch/bin:\$PATH
4. Execute orpatch to list the inventory.  
orphatch lsinventory

## Exporting Environment Metadata

ORPatch functionality is driven based on additional metadata that is stored in the environment to define what version of files are applied to the environment, and which database scripts have been applied to database schemas. This environment metadata is used to analyze the impact of patches to environments and controls what actions are taken during a patch. The metadata is stored in several locations depending on the type of information it tracks and in some cases it may be desirable to extract the metadata for analysis outside of ORPatch. For example, Oracle Support could ask for the metadata to be uploaded to assist them in triaging an application problem.

ORPatch provides a capability to export all of the metadata in an environment into a single directory and to automatically create a zip file of that content for upload or transfer to another system. The exact metadata collected from the environment depends on the products installed in the RETAIL\_HOME.

### ORPatch metadata exported:

| Installed Product Component | Exported Metadata                                                                           | Description                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Any                         | orphatch/config/env_info.cfg<br>orphatch/config/custom_hooks.cfg<br>ORPatch inventory files | ORPatch configuration and settings                                                                                         |
| Any                         | All env_manifest.csv and deleted_env_manifest.csv files                                     | Environment manifest files detailing product files installed, versions, customized flags and which patch provided the file |
| Database Schemas            | DBMANIFEST table contents                                                                   | Database manifest information detailing which database scripts were run, what version and when they were executed          |
| Java Applications           | All files from javaapp_<product>/config except jar files                                    | Environment-specific product configuration files generated during installation                                             |

| Installed Product Component | Exported Metadata                                                                 | Description                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Java Applications           | Combined export of all META-INF/env_manifest.csv files from all product ear files | Jar manifest information detailing files, versions, customized flags and which patch provided the file |
| Java Applications           | orpatch/config/javaapp_<product>/ant.deploy.properties                            | Environment properties file created during product installation and used during application deployment |
| Java Applications           | <weblogic_home>/server/lib/weblogic.policy                                        | WebLogic server java security manager policy file                                                      |
| RMS Batch                   | orpatch/config/rmsbatch_profile                                                   | Batch compilation shell profile                                                                        |
| RMS Forms                   | orpatch/config/rmsforms_profile                                                   | Forms compilation shell profile                                                                        |
| RWMS Forms                  | orpatch/cofngi/rwsforms_profile                                                   | Forms compilation shell profile                                                                        |

Exports of environment metadata are always done to the \$RETAIL\_HOME/support directory. When exporting metadata, you must specify the `-exname` argument and define the name that should be given to the export. The name is used for the directory within \$RETAIL\_HOME/support and for the name of the zip file.

To extract an environment's metadata, perform the following steps:

1. Log in as the UNIX user that owns the product installation.
2. Set the RETAIL\_HOME environment variable to the top-level directory of your product installation.  
`export RETAIL_HOME=/u00/oretail/15.0/tst`
3. Set the PATH environment variable to include the orpatch/bin directory  
`export PATH=$RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/bin:$PATH`
4. Execute orpatch to export the metadata.  
`orpatch exportmetadata -exname test_env`

This example would export all metadata from the environment to the \$RETAIL\_HOME/support/test\_env directory. A zip file of the metadata would be created in \$RETAIL\_HOME/support/test\_env.zip.

---

**Note:** The \$RETAIL\_HOME/support/<name> directory should be empty or not exist prior to running `exportmetadata` in order to ensure accurate results.

---

## Comparing Environment Metadata

Once metadata has been exported from an environment, it can be used to compare the environment manifest metadata of two environments. ORPatch provides a capability to compare metadata of the current environment with the exported metadata of another environment. Note that even though there are many types of metadata exported by ORPatch, only environment manifest metadata is evaluated during comparisons. Metadata comparison happens in four phases: product comparison, patch comparison, ORPatch action comparison, and module-level comparison.

Product comparison compares the products installed in one environment with the products installed in another environment. Patch comparison compares the patches applied in one environment with the patches applied in another environment, for common products. This provides the most summarized view of how environments

differ. Patches which only apply to products on one environment are not included in the comparison.

Since each patch may impact many files, the comparison then moves on to more detailed analysis. The third phase of comparison is to compare the enabled ORPatch actions between environments. These actions roughly correspond to the installed 'components' of a product. For example, one environment may have database and forms components installed while another has only forms. Action comparison identifies components that are different between environments. The final phase of comparison is at the module level for actions that are common between environments. Modules which exist only on one environment, or exist on both environments with different revisions, or which are flagged as customized are reported during the comparison.

Differences between environment metadata are reported in a summarized fashion during the ORPatch execution. Details of the comparison results are saved in `$RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/logs/detail_logs/compare/details`. One CSV file is created for each phase of comparison: `product_details.csv`, `patch_details.csv`, `action_details.csv` and `module_details.csv`.

In order to be compared by ORPatch, exported metadata must be placed in the `$RETAIL_HOME/support` directory. The metadata should exist in the same structure that it was originally exported in. For example, if the metadata was exported to `$RETAIL_HOME/support/test_env` on another system, it should be placed in `$RETAIL_HOME/support/test_env` on this system.

When reporting differences between two environments, ORPatch uses names to refer to the environments. These names are defined as part of the `diffmetadata` command. The `-expname` parameter, which defines the directory containing the metadata, is also used as the name when referring to the exported metadata. The `-srcname` parameter defines the name to use when referring to the current environment. As an example, if you had exported the 'test' environment's metadata and copied it to the 'dev' environment's `$RETAIL_HOME/support/test_env` directory, you could run "`orpatch diffmetadata -expname test_env -srcname dev_env`". The detail and summary output would then refer to things that exist on dev but not test, revisions in the test environment versus revisions in the dev environment, etc.

ORPatch will automatically export the environment's current metadata to `$RETAIL_HOME/support/compare` prior to starting the metadata comparison.

To compare two environment's metadata, perform the following steps:

1. Export the metadata from another environment using `orpatch exportmetadata`.
2. Transfer the metadata zip from the other system to `$RETAIL_HOME/support`.
3. Log in as the UNIX user that owns the product installation.
4. Set the `RETAIL_HOME` environment variable to the top-level directory of your product installation.  
`export RETAIL_HOME=/u00/oretail/15.0/dev`
5. Set the `PATH` environment variable to include the `orpatch/bin` directory  
`export PATH=$RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/bin:$PATH`
6. Unzip the metadata zip file.  
`unzip test_env.zip`
7. Execute `orpatch` to compare the metadata  
`orpatch diffmetadata -expname test_env -srcname dev_env`

This example would compare the current environment against the metadata extracted in `$RETAIL_HOME/support/test_env` directory.

---

**Note:** The \$RETAIL\_HOME/support/compare directory will be automatically removed before environment metadata is exported at the start of the comparison.

---

## Reverting a Patch

In general it is best to either completely apply a patch, or restore the entire environment from the backup taken before starting the patch. It is important to test patches in test or staging environments before applying to production. In the event of problems, Oracle Retail recommends restoring the environment from backup if a patch is not successful.

---

**Note:** Reverting patches in an integrated environment can be extremely complex and there is no fully automated way to revert all changes made by a patch. Restoring the environment from a backup is the recommended method to remove patches.

---

It is, however, possible to revert small patches using the backups taken by ORPatch during a patch. This will restore only the files modified, and it is still necessary to restore the database if any changes were made to it.

---

**Note:** Reverting a patch reverts only the files modified by the patch, and does not modify the database, or recompile forms or batch files after the change.

---

When multiple patches have been applied to an environment, reverting any patches other than the most recently applied patch is strongly discouraged as this will lead to incompatible or inconsistent versions of modules applied to the environment. If multiple patches are going to be applied sequentially it is recommended to first merge the patches into a single patch that can be applied or reverted in a single operation.

To revert a patch, perform the following steps:

1. Log in as the UNIX user that owns the product installation.
2. Set the RETAIL\_HOME environment variable to the top-level directory of your product installation.  
`export RETAIL_HOME=/u00/oretail/15.0/tst`
3. Set the PATH environment variable to include the orpatch/bin directory  
`export PATH=$RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/bin:$PATH`
4. Identify the backup directory in \$RETAIL\_HOME/backups that contains the backup from the patch you want to restore.
  - The backup directory will contain a patch\_info.cfg file which contains the name of the patch the backup is from.
  - It is possible to have two directories for the same patch, if ORPatch was updated during the patch. It is not possible to revert the updates to ORPatch. Select the backup directory that does not contain orpatch files.
  - If it is not clear which backup directory to use, restore the environment from backup
5. Execute orpatch to revert the environment using the contents of the backup directory  
`orphatch revert -s $RETAIL_HOME/backups/backup-11232013-152059`
6. Restore the database from backup if the patch made database changes
7. Use the orcompile script to recompile forms if the patch included RMS or RWMS forms files

```
orcompile -a RMS -t FORMS
orcompile -a RWMS -t FORMS
```

8. Use the orcompile script to recompile batch if the patch included RMS batch files
 

```
orcompile -a RMS -t BATCH
```
9. Use the ordeploy script to redeploy the appropriate Java applications if the patch included Java files
 

```
ordeploy -a RPM -t JAVA
ordeploy -a REIM -t JAVA
ordeploy -a ALLOC -t JAVA
ordeploy -a RESA -t JAVA
```

## Merging Patches

When patches are applied individually some ORPatch tasks such as compiling forms and batch files or deploying Java archives are performed separately for each patch. This can be time-consuming. An alternative is to use the ORMerge utility to combine several patches into a single patch, reducing application downtime by eliminating tasks that would otherwise be performed multiple times. Patches merged with ORMerge are applied with ORPatch after the merge patch is created.

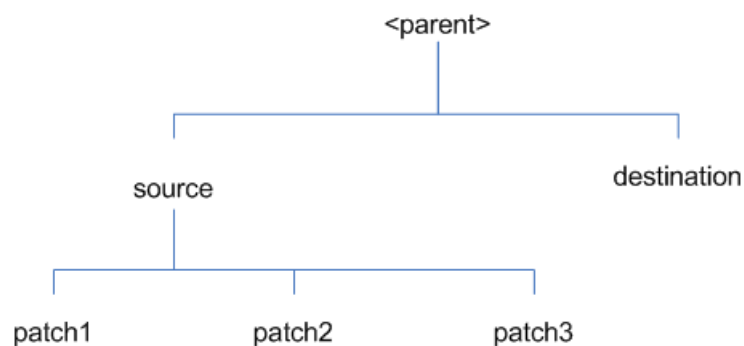
### Source and Destination Directories

ORMerge uses source and destination areas in order to merge patch files. The source area is a single directory that contains the extracted patches to merge. The destination area is the location where the merged patch will be created. If a file exists in one or more source patches, only the highest revision will be copied to the merged patch.

The source and destination directories should exist under the same parent directory. That is, both the source and destination directories should be subdirectories of a single top-level directory.

The source directory must have all patches to be merged as immediate child directories. For example if three patches need to be merged the directory structure would look like this:

### Source and Destination Directory Example



In the example above, the manifest.csv and patch\_info.cfg files for each patch to be merged must exist in source/patch1, source/patch2, and source/patch3.

### ORMerge Command-line Arguments

| Argument | Required | Description                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----------|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -s       | Yes      | Path to source directory containing patches to merge                                                                                                                                         |
| -d       | Yes      | Path to destination directory that will contain merged patch                                                                                                                                 |
| -name    | No       | The name to give the merged patch. If not specified, a name will be generated. When the merged patch is applied to a system, this name will appear in the Oracle Retail patch inventory.     |
| -inplace | No       | Used only when applying a patch to installation files prior to the first installation. See "Patching prior to the first install" in the Troubleshooting section later, for more information. |

### Running the ORMerge Utility

To merge patches, perform the following steps:

1. Log in as the UNIX user that owns the product installation.
2. Set the RETAIL\_HOME environment variable to the top-level directory of your product installation.  

```
export RETAIL_HOME=/u00/oretail/15.0/tst
```
3. Set the PATH environment variable to include the orpatch/bin directory  

```
export PATH=$RETAIL_HOME/orphatch/bin:$PATH
```
4. Create a staging directory to contain the patches.  

```
mkdir -p $RETAIL_HOME/stage/merge/src
```
5. Download the patches to the staging directory and unzip them so that each patch is in a separate subdirectory.
6. Review the README.txt included with each patch to identify additional manual steps that may be required. If manual steps are specified in any patch, execute them at the appropriate time when applying the merged patch.
7. Create a destination directory to contain the merged patches.  

```
mkdir -p $RETAIL_HOME/stage/merge/dest
```
8. Execute ORMerge to merge the patches.  

```
ormerge -s $RETAIL_HOME/stage/merge/src -d $RETAIL_HOME/stage/merge/dest -name merged_patch
```

The merged patch can now be applied as a single patch to the product installation using ORPatch.

### Compiling Application Components

In some cases it may be desirable to recompile RMS Forms, RWMS Forms or RMS Batch outside of a product patch. The ORCompile utility is designed to make this easy and remove the need to manually execute 'make' or 'frmcmp' commands which can be error-prone. ORCompile leverages ORPatch functions to ensure that it compiles forms and batch exactly the same way as ORPatch. In addition ORCompile offers an option to compile invalid database objects using ORPatch logic.

ORCompile takes two required command line arguments each of which take an option. Arguments and options can be specified in upper or lower case.

### ORCompile Command Line Arguments

| Argument  | Description                                |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------|
| -a <app>  | The application to compile.                |
| -t <type> | The type of application objects to compile |

### ORCompile Argument Options

| Application | Type        | Description                                                     |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| RMS         | BATCH       | Compile RMS Batch programs                                      |
| RMS         | FORMS       | Compile RMS Forms                                               |
| RWMS        | FORMS       | Compile RWMS Forms                                              |
| RMS         | DB          | Compile invalid database objects in the primary RMS schema      |
| RMS         | DB-ASYNC    | Compile invalid database objects in the RMS_ASYNC_USER schema   |
| ALLOC       | DB-ALC      | Compile invalid database objects in the Allocations user schema |
| ALLOC       | DB-RMS      | Compile invalid database objects in the RMS schema              |
| REIM        | DB          | Compile invalid database objects in the RMS schema              |
| RME         | DB          | Compile invalid database objects in the RME schema              |
| ASO         | DB          | Compile invalid database objects in the ASO schema              |
| RI          | DB-DM       | Compile invalid database objects in the RI DM schema            |
| RI          | DB-RIBATCH  | Compile invalid database objects in the RI batch schema         |
| RI          | DB-RMSBATCH | Compile invalid database objects in the RI RMS batch schema     |
| RI          | DB-FEDM     | Compile invalid database objects in the RI front-end schema     |
| RDE         | DB-DM       | Compile invalid database objects in the RDE DM schema           |
| RDE         | DB-RDEBATCH | Compile invalid database objects in the RDE batch schema        |
| RDE         | DB-RMSBATCH | Compile invalid database objects in the RDE RMS batch schema    |

**Note:** Compiling RMS type DB, ReIM type DB, and Allocation type DB-RMS, are all identical as they attempt to compile all invalid objects residing in the RMS schema.

### Running the ORCompile utility

To compile files, perform the following steps:

1. Log in as the UNIX user that owns the product installation.
2. Set the RETAIL\_HOME environment variable to the top-level directory of your product installation.  

```
export RETAIL_HOME=/u00/oretail/15.0/tst
```
3. Set the PATH environment variable to include the orpatch/bin directory  

```
export PATH=$RETAIL_HOME/orphatch/bin:$PATH
```

4. Execute orcompile to compile the desired type of files.

```
orcompile -a <app> -t <type>
```

### ORCompile Examples

Compile RMS Batch.

```
orcompile -a RMS -t BATCH
```

Compile RWMS Forms.

```
orcompile -a RWMS -t FORMS
```

Compile invalid objects in the RA DM schema.

```
orcompile -a RI -t DB-DM
```

Compile invalid objects in the RMS owning schema.

```
orcompile -a RMS -t DB
```

## Deploying Application Components

In some cases it may be desirable to redeploy Java applications outside of a product patch. For example, when troubleshooting a problem, or verifying the operation of the application with different WebLogic settings. Another situation might include wanting to deploy the application using the same settings, but without customizations to isolate behavior that could be related to customized functionality.

The ordeploy utility is designed to make this easy and remove the need to re-execute the entire product installer when no configuration needs to change. ORDeploy leverages Oracle Retail Patch Assistant functions to ensure that it deploys applications exactly the same way as ORPatch. In addition ORDeploy offers an option to include or not include custom Java files, to ease troubleshooting.

ORDeploy takes two required command line arguments each of which take an option. Arguments and options can be specified in upper or lower case.

### ORDeploy Command Line Arguments

| Argument  | Description                               |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------|
| -a <app>  | The application to deploy.                |
| -t <type> | The type of application objects to deploy |

### ORDeploy Argument Options

| Application | Type         | Description                                                                                               |
|-------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ALLOC       | JAVA         | Deploy the Allocations Java application and Java batch files, including any custom Java files.            |
| ALLOC       | JAVANOCUSTOM | Deploy the Allocations Java application and Java batch files, <b>NOT</b> including any custom Java files. |
| REIM        | JAVA         | Deploy the REIM Java application and Java batch files, including any custom Java files.                   |
| REIM        | JAVANOCUSTOM | Deploy the REIM Java application and Java batch files, <b>NOT</b> including any custom Java files.        |

| Application | Type         | Description                                                                                       |
|-------------|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| RESA        | JAVA         | Deploy the RESA Java application, including any custom Java files.                                |
| RESA        | JAVANOCUSTOM | Deploy the RESA Java application, <b>NOT</b> including any custom Java files.                     |
| RPM         | JAVA         | Deploy the RPM Java application and Java batch files, including any custom Java files.            |
| RPM         | JAVANOCUSTOM | Deploy the RPM Java application and Java batch files, <b>NOT</b> including any custom Java files. |

### Running the ORDeploy utility

To deploy Java applications, perform the following steps:

1. Log in as the UNIX user that owns the product installation.
2. Set the RETAIL\_HOME environment variable to the top-level directory of your product installation.  

```
export RETAIL_HOME=/u00/oretail/15.0/tst
```
3. Set the PATH environment variable to include the orpatch/bin directory  

```
export PATH=$RETAIL_HOME/orphatch/bin:$PATH
```
4. Execute ORDeploy to deploy the desired Java application.  

```
ordeploy -a <app> -t <type>
```

### ORDeploy Examples

Deploy RPM.

```
ordeploy -a RPM -t JAVA
```

Deploy ReIM without including Java customizations.

```
ordeploy -a REIM -t JAVANOCUSTOM
```

## Maintenance Considerations

The additional information stored within the RETAIL\_HOME and within database schemas adds some considerations when performing maintenance on your environment.

### Database Password Changes

Oracle wallets are used to protect the password credentials for connecting to database schemas. This includes all database schemas used during an install. If the password for any of these users is changed the wallet's entry must be updated.

The wallet location is configurable but by default is in the following locations:

| Location                               | Installation Type         |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| \$RETAIL_HOME/orphatch/rms_wallet      | RMS Database<br>RMS Batch |
| \$RETAIL_HOME/orphatch/rms_wallet_app  | RMS Forms                 |
| \$RETAIL_HOME/orphatch/rwms_wallet     | RWMS Database             |
| \$RETAIL_HOME/orphatch/rwms_wallet_app | RWMS Forms                |
| \$RETAIL_HOME/orphatch/oraso_wallet    | ASO Database              |

| Location                          | Installation Type           |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| \$RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/orme_wallet | RME Database                |
| \$RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/ra_wallet   | RI (Previously RA) Database |
| \$RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/rde_wallet  | RDE Database                |

The wallet alias for each schema will be <username>\_<dbname>. Standard mkstore commands can be used to update the password.

For example:

```
mkstore -wrl $RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/rms_wallet -modifyCredential rms_rmsdb rms01
rmspassword
```

This command will update the password for the RMS01 user to 'rmspassword' in the alias 'rms\_rmsdb'.

The Oracle wallets are required to be present when executing ORPatch. Removing them will prevent you from being able to run ORPatch successfully. In addition the Oracle wallet location is referenced in the RMS batch.profile, and in the default RMS and RWMS Forms URL configuration, so removing them will require reconfiguration of batch and forms. If batch and forms were reconfigured after installation to use other wallet files, it is possible to backup and remove the wallets, then restore them when running ORPatch.

## WebLogic Password Changes

Java wallets are used to protect the password credentials used when deploying Java products. This includes the WebLogic administrator credentials, LDAP connection credentials, batch user credentials and any other credentials used during an install. If the password for any of these users is changed the wallet's entry must be updated, or the Java product installation can be run again.

The wallet location is in the following locations:

| Location                                   | Installation Type             |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| \$RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/config/javapp_rpm    | RPM Java                      |
| \$RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/config/javapp_reim   | ReIM Java                     |
| \$RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/config/javapp_alloc  | Allocation Java               |
| \$RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/config/javapp_resa   | RESA Java                     |
| \$RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/config/javaapp_rasrm | ORAAC (Previously RASRM) Java |

The wallet aliases will be stored in the retail\_installer partition. The names of the aliases will vary depending on what was entered during initial product installation.

The dump\_credentials.sh script can be used to list the aliases in the wallet.

For example:

```
cd $RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/deploy/retail-public-security-api/bin
./dump_credentials.sh $RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/config/javapp_alloc
```

```
Application level key partition name:retail_installer
```

```
User Name Alias:dsallocAlias User Name:rms01app
```

```
User Name Alias:BATCH-ALIAS User Name:<SYSTEM_ADMINISTRATOR>
```

User Name Alias:wlsAlias User Name:<weblogic>

The easiest way to update the credential information is to re-run the Java product installer. If you need to manually update the password for a credential, the `save_credential.sh` script can be used.

For example:

```
cd $RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/deploy/retail-public-security-api/bin
./save_credential.sh -l $RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/config/javapp_alloc -p
retail_installer -a wlsAlias -u weblogic
```

This command will prompt for the new password twice and update the alias `wlsAlias`, username `weblogic` with the new password.

## Infrastructure Directory Changes

The `RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/config/env_info.cfg` file contains the path to the database `ORACLE_HOME` on database or RMS Batch installations, to the WebLogic Forms and Reports `ORACLE_HOME` and `ORACLE_INSTANCE` on RMS or RWMS Forms installations, and to the `WEBLOGIC_DOMAIN_HOME`, `WL_HOME` and `MW_HOME` on Java product installations. If these paths change, the related configuration variables in the `env_info.cfg` file must be updated.

## DBManifest Table

The table `dbmanifest` within Oracle Retail database schemas is used to track the database scripts which have been applied to the schema. It is critical not to drop or truncate this table. Without it, ORPatch will attempt to re-run scripts against the database which have already been applied which can destroy a working environment. Similarly, if copying a schema from one database to another database, ensure that the `dbmanifest` table is preserved during the copy.

## RETAIL\_HOME relationship to Database and Application Server

The `RETAIL_HOME` associated with an Oracle Retail product installation is critical due to the additional metadata and historical information contained within it. If a database or application installation is moved or copied, the `RETAIL_HOME` related to it should be copied or moved at the same time.

## Jar Signing Configuration Maintenance

The RPM product installation includes an option to configure a code signing certificate so that jar files modified during installation or patching are automatically re-signed. This configuration is optional, but recommended. If it is configured, the code signing keystore is copied during installation to `$RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/config/jarsign/orpkeystore.jks`. The keystore password and private key password are stored in a Java wallet in the `$RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/config/jarsign` directory. The credentials are stored in a wallet partition called `orpatch`:

| Alias     | Username | Description                  |
|-----------|----------|------------------------------|
| storepass | discard  | Password for the keystore    |
| keypass   | discard  | Password for the private key |

The keystore file and passwords can be updated using the product installer. This is the recommended way to update the signing configuration.

If only the credentials need to be updated, the `sign_jar.sh` script can be used.

5. Log in as the UNIX user that owns the product installation.
6. Set the `RETAIL_HOME` environment variable to the top-level directory of your installation.  
`export RETAIL_HOME=/u00/oretail/15.0/tst`
7. Change directories to the location of `sign_jar.sh`  
`cd $RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/deploy/bin`
8. Execute `sign_jar.sh`  
`sign_jar.sh changepwd`
9. When prompted, enter the new keystore password
10. When prompted, enter the new private key password

## Customization

### Patching Considerations with Customized Files and Objects

In general, the additional capabilities provided by the ORPatch should make it easier to evaluate the potential impacts of patches to your customizations of Oracle Retail products. However, the additional metadata maintained by the Oracle Retail patching utilities does add some considerations when making customizations.

#### General Guidelines

It is always preferred to customize applications by extension rather than by direct modification. For example, adding new database objects and forms rather than modifying existing Oracle Retail objects and forms. You can also leverage built-in extension points such as User Defined Attributes, the Custom Flexible Attribute Solution, or seeded customization points in ADF Applications.

It is strongly discouraged to directly modify Oracle Retail database objects, especially tables, as your changes may be lost during patching or may conflict with future updates. When adding or modifying database objects, Oracle Retail recommends that all objects be added with scripts to ensure that they can be rebuilt if necessary after a patch.

#### Custom Database Objects

When you create new database objects, Oracle Retail recommends placing them in an Oracle database schema specifically for your customizations. You must use synonyms and grants to allow the Oracle Retail product schema owner and other users to access your objects, and use synonyms and grants to allow your customizations to access Oracle Retail objects. A separate schema will ensure that your customizations are segregated from base Oracle Retail code.

ORPatch expects that there will be no invalid objects in the database schemas it manages after a patch is applied. For this reason adding extra objects to the product schema could result in failures to apply patches as changes to base objects may cause custom objects to go invalid until they are updated. In this situation, manually update the custom objects so that they compile, and restart the patch.

#### Custom Forms

When creating new custom forms, Oracle Retail recommends placing them in a separate directory specifically for your customizations. This directory should be added to the FORMS\_PATH of your RMS or RWMS Forms URL configuration to allow the forms to be found by the Forms Server. This will ensure that your customizations are segregated from base Oracle Retail code. If you choose to place customizations in the Forms bin directory, then your custom forms will need to be recopied each time Forms are fully recompiled.

#### ADF Application Customization

Oracle Retail ADF-based applications such as Allocation and ReSA can be customized using a process called 'seeded customization'. The customization process involves using JDeveloper in Customizer mode to create changes to product configurations, and then building a MAR archive containing the changes. The generated MAR is deployed to the MDS repository used by the application and applied to the application at runtime. These types of customizations are handled outside of ORPatch and are not reported during patch analysis or tracked by the custom file registration utility. More information can be found in the respective product customization guides.

## Custom Compiled Java Code

When customizing Oracle Retail Java-based products such as RPM and ReIM via product source code, ORPatch supports automatically adding compiled customizations into the application ear file prior to deployment. This allows customizations to be applied to the application without directly modifying the base product ear, enabling customizations and defect hotfixes to co-exist when they do not change the same file or a dependent file. See the later “Custom Compiled Java Code” section for additional information and considerations.

## Analyze Patches when Customizations are Present

Whenever you have customized a product by directly modifying Oracle Retail files or database objects, it is important to ensure you analyze each the files that will be updated by a patch before applying the patch. This will allow you to identify any customized files which may be overwritten by the patch and either merge your customization with the new version of the file, or re-apply the customization after applying the patch.

## Manifest Updates

If you choose to customize Oracle Retail files directly, it is extremely important **not** to update the revision number contained in the `env_manifest.csv`. This could cause future updates to the file to be skipped, invalidating later patch applications as only a partial patch would be applied. The customized revision number for modified files will need to be tracked separately.

## Registering Customized Files

The ORPatch contains utilities and functionality to allow tracking of files that have been customized through direct modification. This process is referred to as ‘registering’ a customized file. Registration only works for files which are shipped by Oracle Retail. It is not possible to register new files created in the environment as part of extensions or customizations.

When patches are analyzed with ORPatch, special reporting is provided if any registered files would be updated or deleted by the patch. Customized files impacted by the patch are listed at the end of the analysis report from ORPatch. The detail files generated during the analyze will contain a column called ‘customized’ which will have a Y for any files which were registered as customized. This allows easier identification of customizations which will be overwritten by a patch.

All files delivered by Oracle Retail are considered ‘base’ and so when they are applied to an environment any registrations of those files as customized will revert back to un-customized. **Each time a patch overwrites customized files, you must re-register the files as customized once you have applied customizations.**

To register customized files, use the `$RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/bin/orcustomreg` script.

The `orcustomreg` script operates in one of two modes: registration and list.

- Registration mode registers or unregisters one or more files as customized.
- List mode lists all files in the environment that are registered as customized.

## Command Line Arguments for Registration Mode

| Argument                     | Description                                                                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-f &lt;file&gt;</code> | Adds <file> to the list of files that will be registered. Can be specified more than once. |

| Argument     | Description                                                                                                        |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -bulk <file> | Specifies a file to read, containing one filename per line. All filenames listed inside <file> will be registered. |
| -register    | Files specified with -f or -bulk will be registered as 'customized'                                                |
| -unregister  | Files specified with -f or -bulk will be registered as 'base'                                                      |

**Notes:**

- At least one of -f or -bulk is required.
- If neither -register nor -unregister is specified, the default is '-register'.
- File names specified with -f must either be fully-qualified or be relative to RETAIL\_HOME. The same is true for filenames specified within a -bulk file.

**Command Line arguments for list mode**

| Argument | Description                                                |
|----------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| -list    | List all files in the environment registered as customized |

**Running the orcustomreg Script**

Perform the following procedure to run the orcustomreg script:

1. Log in as the UNIX user that owns the product installation.
2. Set the RETAIL\_HOME environment variable to the top-level directory of your product installation.  
export RETAIL\_HOME=/u00/oretail/15.0/tst
3. Set the PATH environment variable to include the orpatch/bin directory  
export PATH=\$RETAIL\_HOME/orphatch/bin:\$PATH
4. Execute orcustomreg script to register the desired file(s).  
orcustomreg -register -f <file>

**Examples of using the orcustomreg Script**

Register \$RETAIL\_HOME/dbsql\_rms/Cross\_Pillar/control\_scripts/source/oga.sql as customized.

```
orcustomreg -f dbsql_rms/Cross_Pillar/control_scripts/source/oga.sql
```

Unregister customizations for

```
$RETAIL_HOME/dbsql_rwms/Triggers/Source/TR_WAVE.trg
```

```
orcustomreg -unregister -f $RETAIL_HOME/dbsql_rwms/Triggers/Source/TR_WAVE.trg
```

Bulk register several files as customized.

```
echo "$RETAIL_HOME/oracle/proc/src/mrt.pc" > custom.txt
echo "$RETAIL_HOME/oracle/proc/src/saldly.pc" >> custom.txt
echo "$RETAIL_HOME/oracle/proc/src/ccprg.pc" >> custom.txt
orcustomreg -bulk custom.txt
```

List all files registered as customized.  
 orcustomreg -list

## Custom Compiled Java Code

When customizing Oracle Retail Java-based products such as RPM and ReIM via product source code, ORPatch supports automatically adding compiled customizations into the application ear file prior to deployment. This allows customizations to be applied to the application without directly modifying the base product ear, enabling customizations and defect hotfixes to co-exist when they do not change the same file or a dependent file.

This functionality is enabled by creating a directory called \$RETAIL\_HOME/javaapp\_<app>/custom, where <app> is the application the customizations apply to. Files stored within this directory will be combined with the base product ear files before the application is deployed to WebLogic. ORPatch will attempt to consider customizations stored within the 'custom' directory during patch analysis by triggering more detailed ear file change analysis to assist with identifying which customizations might be impacted by changes in the patches.

---

**Note:** It is not possible, nor necessary, to register compiled Java customizations with the orcustomreg tool.

---

As with other customization techniques for other technologies, Oracle Retail recommends making Java customizations in new files as much as possible, versus overwriting base product or configuration files. In the past it was necessary to build complete replacement product ear files, but this method of customization is no longer required nor recommended. Replacement ear and jar files will not contain the META-INF/env\_manifest.csv files which are required in order to be able to apply incremental patches. Instead, compile the specific Java classes being customized and place them along with any custom configuration files in \$RETAIL\_HOME/javaapp\_<app>/custom.

### Building Deployable ear files

When constructing the product ear file to deploy to WebLogic, ORPatch applies changes to the ear file in a specific order, with files from later steps overwriting files in earlier steps. The resulting ear is stored in \$RETAIL\_HOME/javaapp\_<app>/deploy, and then deployed to WebLogic.

### Sequence for ORPatch Java Product ear file updates

| Order | File Type                       | Location                             |
|-------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1     | Base product ear                | \$RETAIL_HOME/javaapp_<app>/base     |
| 2     | Updated configuration files     | \$RETAIL_HOME/javaapp_<app>/config   |
| 3     | Oracle Retail-supplied hotfixes | \$RETAIL_HOME/javaapp_<app>/internal |
| 4     | Compiled customizations         | \$RETAIL_HOME/javaapp_<app>/custom   |

### Merging Custom Files

When merging files from the custom directory with the product ear, ORPatch uses the directory path of the files within custom to calculate where the file should be stored within the ear. This allows arbitrary nesting of files, even when placing files within jars stored in jars, stored within the ear. The following examples below use RPM, but apply to adding compiled customizations to any Java-based product.

### Custom directory location and product ear location Examples

| File path within javaapp_<app>/custom/                                  | Final Ear File Location                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| rpm.ear/company/ui/MyCustom.class                                       | In rpm.ear:<br>/company/ui/MyCustom.class                                                 |
| rpm.ear/rpm.jar/company/bc/MyCustom2.class                              | In rpm.ear:<br>In rpm.jar:<br>/company/bc/MyCustom2.class                                 |
| rpm.ear/lib/ourcustomlibs.jar                                           | In rpm.ear<br>/lib/ourcustomlibs.jar                                                      |
| rpm.ear/WebLaunchServlet.war/lib/<br>rpm.jar/company/bc/MyCustom2.class | In rpm.ear:<br>In WebLaunchServlet.war:<br>In lib/rpm.jar:<br>/company/bc/MyCustom2.class |

### Analyzing patches when customizations are present

When analyzing a patch which contains a base product ear and the custom directory contains files, ORPatch will automatically trigger a more detailed analysis of the changes coming in a patch. This includes calculating what files inside the product ear have been added, removed or updated and which files appear to be customized based on the contents of the 'custom' directory. The detailed results of the ear file comparison during patch analysis will be saved in javaapp\_<app>\_archive\_compare\_details.csv. Any custom files which appeared to be impacted by the patch are saved in javapp\_<app>\_archive\_custom\_impacts.csv. Both files will be in the \$RETAIL\_HOME/orpatch/logs/detail\_logs/analyze/details directory.

---

**Note:** This detailed analysis is not available when analyzing individual hotfixes, so special care must be taken when applying hotfixes to a customized product installation, to ensure there are no conflicts between customizations and hotfix changes.

---

### Customizations and cumulative patches

By default, when applying a cumulative patch, ORPatch will not include customizations in the deployed product ear, even if they are present in the appropriate directory. This allows verification that the application is functioning properly using base code, before applying customizations. After verifying the initial deployment, use ORDeploy with the "-t JAVA" option to construct and deploy the product ear including customizations.

If customizations need to be removed outside of a patch, use ORDeploy with the "-t JAVANOCUSTOM" option to create and deploy an ear containing only Oracle Retail code. To force ORPatch to include customizations in the deployed ear even when applying a cumulative patch, set JAVAAPP\_<app>\_INCLUDE\_CUSTOM=Y in the \$RETAIL\_HOME/orpatch/config/env\_info.cfg file.

### Changing configuration files

It is possible to directly change product configuration files in \$RETAIL\_HOME/javaapp\_<app>/config. These updates can be deployed to the environment using the ORDeploy utility. However, the 'config' directory is completely

recreated each time the product installer is used. This means that modifications will be lost and must be manually reapplied after each installer run. It is recommended to make configuration changes via the installer where possible, and retain the `ant.install.properties` file for use in later installer sessions.

## Extending Oracle Retail Patch Assistant with Custom Hooks

The default ORPatch actions and processing logic is sufficient to install and patch the base Oracle Retail product code. However there may be situations where custom processing is desired during patching activities such as executing a shell script prior to the start of patching, or running a SQL script at the end of the patch.

ORPatch supports extensions in the form of custom hooks. These hooks allow external scripts to be run at specific points during ORPatch processing.

### ORPatch Processing

#### Action

ORPatch supports a variety of 'actions' which define the steps necessary to apply updates to a particular area of the Oracle Retail application. Each action is generally specific to updates to a single technology or logical component of the environment. For example, one action might handle making updates to the RMS database schema, while a separate action is responsible for compiling RWMS forms, and a different action deploys the RPM Java application. These actions are enabled and disabled within the environment configuration file, allowing ORPatch to determine what types of changes to apply to each product installation.

#### ORPatch Actions

| Order | Action Name    | Description                                                                                      |
|-------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1     | DBSQL_RMS      | Loads RMS and RPM database objects into the primary RMS schema                                   |
| 2     | DBSQL_RMSASYNC | Loads database objects into the RMS_ASYNC_USER schema                                            |
| 3     | DBSQL_RAF      | Loads Retail Application Framework database objects into the RMS schema                          |
| 4     | DBSQL_REIM     | Loads ReIM database objects into the RMS schema                                                  |
| 5     | DBSQL_ALCRMS   | Loads Allocation database objects into the RMS schema                                            |
| 6     | DBSQL_ALLOC    | Loads Allocation database objects into the Allocation user schema                                |
| 7     | DBSQL_RMSDEMO  | Used to create demo data in the RMS schema if demo data was selected during initial installation |
| 8     | DBSQL_RMSDAS   | Loads database objects into the RMS Data Access Schema                                           |
| 9     | RMSBATCH       | Compiles RMS Batch                                                                               |
| 10    | ORAFORMS_RMS   | Compiles RMS Forms, copies RMS reports to \$RETAIL_HOME                                          |
| 11    | RMSRETLSCRIPTS | Copies Oracle Retail Extract and Load scripts for RMS                                            |
| 12    | RMSDCSCRIPTS   | Copies Oracle Retail Merchandising System data conversion scripts                                |

| Order | Action Name       | Description                                                                    |
|-------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 13    | DBSQL_RWMS        | Loads database objects into the primary RWMS schema                            |
| 14    | DBSQL_RWMSADF     | Loads database objects into the RWMS ADF user schema                           |
| 15    | DBSQL_RWMSUSER    | Loads database objects into the RWMS user schema                               |
| 16    | ORAFORMS_RWMS     | Compiles RWMS Forms, copies RWMS batch scripts and reports to \$RETAIL_HOME    |
| 17    | JAVAAPP_RPM       | Deploys the RPM Java application and batch scripts                             |
| 18    | JAVAAPP_REIM      | Deploys the REIM Java application and batch scripts                            |
| 19    | JAVAAPP_ALLOC     | Deploys the Allocation Java application and batch scripts                      |
| 20    | JAVAAPP_RESA      | Deploys the ReSA Java application                                              |
| 21    | JAVAAPP_RASRM     | Deploys the ORAAC (previously called RASRM) Java application                   |
| 22    | DBSQL_RARMSBATCH  | Loads database objects into the RMS Batch schema for RI (previously called RA) |
| 23    | DBSQL_RADM        | Loads database objects into the RI (previously called RA) Data Mart schema     |
| 24    | DBSQL_RAFEDM      | Loads database objects into the RI (previously called RA) Front-end schema     |
| 25    | DBSQL_RABATCH     | Loads database objects into the RI (previously called RA) Batch schema         |
| 26    | DBSQL_RDERMSBATCH | Loads database objects into the RMS Batch schema for RDE                       |
| 27    | DBSQL_RDEDM       | Loads database objects into the RDE Data Mart schema                           |
| 28    | DBSQL_RDEBATCH    | Loads database objects into the RDE Batch schema                               |
| 29    | DBSQL_RASECORE    | Loads core database objects into the ORASE schema                              |
| 30    | DBSQL_RASEASO     | Loads ASO database objects into the ORASE schema                               |
| 31    | DBSQL_RASECDT     | Loads CDT database objects into the ORASE schema                               |
| 32    | DBSQL_RASECIS     | Loads CIS database objects into the ORASE schema                               |
| 33    | DBSQL_RASEDT      | Loads DT database objects into the ORASE schema                                |
| 34    | DBSQL_RASEMBA     | Loads MBA database objects into the ORASE schema                               |
| 35    | RASECOREBATCH     | Copies ORASE core batch scripts and libraries                                  |
| 36    | RASEASOBATCH      | Copies ORASE ASO batch scripts and libraries                                   |
| 37    | RASECDTBATCH      | Copies ORASE CDT batch scripts and libraries                                   |
| 38    | RASECISBATCH      | Copies ORASE CIS batch scripts and libraries                                   |
| 39    | RASEDTBATCH       | Copies ORASE DT batch scripts and libraries                                    |
| 40    | RASEMBABATCH      | Copies ORASE MBA batch scripts and libraries                                   |

## Phase

ORPatch processes patches in phases. Each action relevant to a patch and host is provided an opportunity to process the patch for each phase. The standard phases which allow hooks are:

| Restart Phase Number | Phase Name  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| N/A                  | PRECHECK    | Actions verify that their configuration appears complete and correct. This phase and the associated hooks will be run every time orpatch is executed, even if processing will be restarted in a later phase.         |
| 10                   | PREACTION   | Actions do processing prior to when files are copied to the environment. Files are deleted during this phase.                                                                                                        |
| 20                   | COPYPATCH   | Actions copy files included in a patch into the destination environment and the environment manifest is updated.                                                                                                     |
| 30                   | PATCHACTION | Actions take the more detailed steps necessary to apply the new files to the environment. For database actions in particular, this is the phase when new and updated sql files are loaded into the database.         |
| 40                   | POSTACTION  | Actions do processing after files have been copied and PatchActions are completed. The Forms actions, for example, use this phase to compile the forms files as this must happen after database packages are loaded. |
| 50                   | CLEANUP     | Actions do any additional processing. Currently no actions implement activities in this phase.                                                                                                                       |

## Configuring Custom Hooks

Custom hooks are configured in a configuration file `RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/config/custom_hooks.cfg`. The configuration file is a simple text file where blank lines and lines starting with `#` are ignored and all other lines should define a custom hook.

To define a custom hook, a line is added to the file in the form:

```
<hook name>=<fully qualified script>
```

The hook name must be in upper case and is in the form:

```
<action name>_<phase name>_<sequence>
```

The action name is any action name understood by ORPatch. The phase name is one of the five phase names from the table above. The sequence is either 'START' or 'END'. Hooks defined with a sequence of 'START' are run before the action's phase is invoked. Hooks defined with a sequence of 'END' are run after the action's phase is invoked.

Multiple scripts can be associated with a single hook by separating the script names with a comma. If a hook name appears in the configuration file multiple times only the last entry will be used.

The script defined as a custom hook must be an executable shell script that does not take any arguments or inputs. The only environment variable that is guaranteed to be passed to the custom hook is `RETAIL_HOME`. The script must return 0 on success and non-zero on failure.

If an action is a DBSQL action (i.e. has a name like `DBSQL_`), the custom hook can optionally be a .sql file. In this case the SQL script will be run against the database schema that the DBSQL action normally executes against. The SQL script must not

generate any ORA- or SP2- errors on success. In order to be treated as a database script, the extension of the file defined as the custom hook must be .sql in lower-case. Any other extension will be treated as if it is a shell script. If you have database scripts with different extensions, they must be renamed or wrapped in a .sql script.

When using the PRECHECK phase and START sequence, please note that the custom hook will be executed prior to any verification of the configuration. Invalid configuration, such as invalid database username/password or a non-existent ORACLE\_HOME, may cause the custom hook to fail depending on the actions it tries to take. However in these cases, the normal orpatch PRECHECK activities would likely have failed as well. All that is lost is the additional context that orpatch would have provided about what was incorrect about the configuration.

### Restarting with Custom Hooks

If a custom hook fails, for example a shell script hook returns non-zero or a sql script generates an ORA- error in its output, the custom hook will be treated as failing. A failing custom hook causes ORPatch to immediately stop the patching session.

When ORPatch is restarted it always restarts with the same phase and action, including any START sequence custom hooks. If the START sequence custom hook fails, the action's phase is never executed. With an END sequence custom hook, the action's phase is re-executed when ORPatch is restarted and then the custom hook is re-executed.

When an action's phase is costly, for example the DBSQL\_RMS action which does a lot of work, this can mean a lot of duplicate processing.

For this reason it is preferred to use START sequence custom hooks whenever possible. If necessary, use a START sequence hook on a later phase or a later action, rather than an END sequence custom hook.

### Patch-level Custom Hooks

In addition to action-specific hooks, there are two patch-level hook points available. These hooks allow scripts to be run before any patching activities start and after all patching activities are completed. The hooks are defined in the same configuration file, with a special hook name.

To run a script before patching, define:

```
ORPATCH_PATCH_START=<fully qualified script>
```

To run a script after patching, define:

```
ORPATCH_PATCH_END=<fully qualified script>
```

These hooks only support executing shell scripts, database scripts must be wrapped in a shell script. It is also important to note that these hooks are run on every execution of ORPatch to apply a patch, even when restarting a patch application. If the START sequence patch-level hook returns a failure, patching is aborted. If the END sequence patch-level hook returns a failure, it is logged but ignored as all patching activities have already completed.

Please note that the ORPATCH\_PATCH\_START hook is executed prior to any verification of the configuration. Invalid configuration may cause the custom hook to fail depending on the actions it tries to take. However in these cases, the normal ORPatchactivities would likely fail as well.

### Example Custom Hook Definitions

A shell script that is executed prior to the Pre-Action phase of RMS Batch:

```
RMSBATCH_PREACTION_START=/u00/oretail/prepare_custom_header.sh
```

A shell script that is executed after RETL script files are copied into the RETAIL\_HOME:  
RETLSCRIPTS\_COPYPATCH\_END=/u00/oretail/copy\_custom\_files.sh

A SQL script that is executed against the RWMS owning schema at the start of the Clean-up Phase:  
DBSQL\_RWMS\_CLEANUP\_START=/dba/sql/recompile\_synonyms.sql

## Troubleshooting Patching

There is not a general method for determining the cause of a patching failure. It is important to ensure that patches are thoroughly tested in a test or staging system several times prior to attempting to apply the patch to a production system, particularly if the patch is a large cumulative patch. After the test application is successful, apply the patch to the production system.

## ORPatch Log Files

ORPatch records extensive information about the activities during a patch to the log files in `RETAIL_HOME/orphatch/logs`. This includes a summary of the actions that are planned for a patch, information about all files that were updated by the patch, and detailed information about subsequent processing of those files. The ORPatch log files also contain timestamps to assist in correlating log entries with other logs.

Even more detailed logs are available in `RETAIL_HOME/orphatch/logs/detail_logs` for some activities such as forms compilation, invalid database object errors, and output from custom hooks. If the standard ORPatch log information is not sufficient, it might be helpful to check the detailed log if it exists.

## Restarting ORPatch

The restart mechanism in ORPatch is designed to be safe in nearly any situation. In some cases to ensure this, a portion of work may be redone. If the failure was caused by an intermittent issue that has been resolved, restarting ORPatch may be sufficient to allow the patch to proceed.

## Manual DBManifest Updates

A possible cause for database change script failures is that a database change was already made manually to the database. In this event, you may need to update the dbmanifest table to record that a specific script does not need to be run. Before doing this, it is extremely important to ensure that all statements contained in the script have been completed.

Use the `$RETAIL_HOME/orphatch/bin/ordbmreg` script to register database scripts in the dbmanifest table.

### Command Line Arguments for ordbmreg

| Argument                        | Description                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-f &lt;file&gt;</code>    | Adds <file> to the list of files that will be registered. Can be specified more than once.                         |
| <code>-bulk &lt;file&gt;</code> | Specifies a file to read, containing one filename per line. All filenames listed inside <file> will be registered. |
| <code>-register</code>          | Files specified with <code>-f</code> or <code>-bulk</code> will be registered in the dbmanifest table              |
| <code>-unregister</code>        | Files specified with <code>-f</code> or <code>-bulk</code> will be removed from the dbmanifest table               |

---

**Notes:**

- At least one of -f or -bulk is required.
  - If neither -register nor -unregister is specified, the default is '-register'.
  - File names specified with -f must either be fully-qualified or be relative to RETAIL\_HOME. The same is true for filenames specified within a -bulk file.
  - Registering a file in the dbmanifest table will cause it to be completely skipped. Before doing so, ensure that all commands contained in it have been completed.
  - Removing a file from the dbmanifest table will cause it to be run again. This will fail if the commands in the script cannot be re-run. For example if they create a table that already exists.
- 

### Running the ordbmreg Script

Perform the following procedure to run the ordbmreg script:

1. Log in as the UNIX user that owns the product installation.
2. Set the RETAIL\_HOME environment variable to the top-level directory of your product installation.  
`export RETAIL_HOME=/u00/oretail/15.0/tst`
3. Set the PATH environment variable to include the orpatch/bin directory  
`export PATH=$RETAIL_HOME/orphatch/bin:$PATH`
4. Execute ordbmreg script to register the desired file(s).  
`ordbmreg -register -f <file>`

### Examples of using the ordbmreg Script

Register

`$RETAIL_HOME/dbsql_rms/Cross_Pillar/db_change_scripts/source/000593_system_options.sql` with the dbmanifest table.

```
ordbmreg -f
dbsql_rms/Cross_Pillar/db_change_scripts/source/000593_system_options.sql
```

Remove the dbmanifest row for

`$RETAIL_HOME/dbsql_radm/ra_db/radm/database_change_scripts/000035_s12733240_w_party_per_d.sql`.

```
ordbmreg -unregister -f
$RETAIL_HOME/dbsql_radm/ra_db/radm/database_change_scripts/000035_s12733240_w_party_per_d.sql
```

Bulk register several files in the dbmanifest table.

```
echo "$RETAIL_HOME/dbsql_rwms/DBCs/Source/000294_container.sql" > dbcs.txt
echo "$RETAIL_HOME/dbsql_rwms/DBCs/Source/000457_drop_object.sql" >> dbcs.txt
ordbmreg -bulk dbcs.txt
```

### Restarting after registration

Once the row has been added to the dbmanifest table, restart ORPatch and the script will be skipped. If the file is not skipped there are several possibilities:

- The script registered is not the failing script.
- The file type is not a type that is filtered by the dbmanifest. The only file types that skip files listed in the dbmanifest are:
  - Initial install DDL Files
  - Installation scripts that cannot be rerun
  - Database Change Scripts

## Manual Restart State File Updates

Oracle Retail strongly discourages manually updating the ORPatch restart state files. Updating the file improperly could cause necessary steps in the patching process to be skipped or patches to be incorrectly recorded as applied.

## DISPLAY Settings When Compiling Forms

When compiling RMS or RWMS forms, it is necessary to have a valid X-Windows Display. ORPatch allows this setting to come from one of two places:

- DISPLAY environment variable set before executing ORPatch
- or
- DISPLAY setting in RETAIL\_HOME/orpatch/config/env\_info.cfg

The DISPLAY variable in the environment overrides the env\_info.cfg, if both are set. The destination X-Windows display must be accessible to the user running ORPatch, and for best compilation performance it should be on the network 'close' to the server where RMS Forms are installed and compiled. Using a local display or VNC display is preferred. Compiling forms across a Wide-Area Network will greatly increase the time required to apply patches to environments.

## JAVA\_HOME Setting

When working with Java application jar, ear or war files, it is necessary to have a valid JAVA\_HOME setting. ORPatch allows this setting to come from one of two places:

- JAVA\_HOME environment variable set before executing ORPatch
- or
- JAVA\_HOME setting in RETAIL\_HOME/orpatch/config/env\_info.cfg

The JAVA\_HOME variable in the environment overrides the env\_info.cfg, if both are set. The specified Java home location must be accessible to the user running ORPatch and be a full Java Development Kit (JDK) installation. The JAVA\_HOME must contain the jar utility and if automatic Jar file signing is configured, must also contain the keytool and jarsigner utilities.

## Patching Prior to First Install

In some situations, it may be necessary to apply a patch to product installation files before the initial install. For example, if there is a defect with a script that would be run during the install and prevent proper installation. In this rare situation, it may be necessary to apply a patch to the installation files prior to starting installation.

---

**Note:** These steps should only be undertaken at the direction of Oracle Support.

---

Perform the following steps to patch installation files prior to starting an installation. The steps assume an RMS installation, but apply to any product supported by ORPatch:

1. Unzip the installation files to a staging area.

---

**Note:** The following steps assume the files are in  
/media/oretail15.0

---

2. Locate the patch\_info.cfg within the product media. The directory it resides in will be used for later steps.

```
find /media/oretail15.0/rms/installer -name patch_info.cfg
```

Output Example:

```
/media/oretail15.0/rms/installer/mom15/patch_info.cfg
```

3. Get the PATCH\_NAME for the standard product installation. The patch name to use in subsequent steps will be the portion following the "=" sign.

```
grep "PATCH_NAME=" /media/oretail15.0/rms/installer/mom15/patch_info.cfg
```

Output Example:

```
PATCH_NAME=MOM_15_0_0_0
```

4. Create a directory that will contain the patch that must be applied, next to the directory with the product installation files.

---

**Note:** The following steps assume this directory is in  
/media/patch.

---

5. Unzip the patch into the directory created in step 2.

---

**Note:** This should place the patch contents in  
/media/patch/<patch num>.

---

6. Export RETAIL\_HOME to point within the installation staging area.

```
export RETAIL_HOME=/media/oretail15.0/rms/installer/mom15/Build
```

7. Create a logs directory within the installation staging area

```
mkdir $RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/logs
```

8. Ensure the ORMerge shell script is executable.

```
chmod u+x $RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/bin/ormerge
```

9. Run ORMerge to apply the patch to the installation media, using a -name argument that is the same as what was found in step 3.

```
$RETAIL_HOME/orpatch/bin/ormerge -s /media/patch -d
/media/oretail15.0/rms/installer/mom15 -name MOM_15_0_0_0 -inplace
```

---

**Note:** The -inplace argument is critical to ensure that the  
patching replaces files in the mom15 directory.

---

10. Unset the RETAIL\_HOME environment variable.

```
unset RETAIL_HOME
```

At this point, the installation files will have been updated with the newer versions of files contained within the patch. Log files for the merge will be in  
/media/oretail15.0/rms/installer/mom15/Build/orpatch/logs.

## Providing Metadata to Oracle Support

In some situations, it may be necessary to provide details of the metadata from an environment to Oracle support in order to assist with investigating a patching or application problem. ORPatch provides built-in functionality through the 'exportmetadata' action to extract and consolidate metadata information for uploading to

Oracle Support or for external analysis. For more information, see the ORPatch 'Exporting Environment Metadata' section.

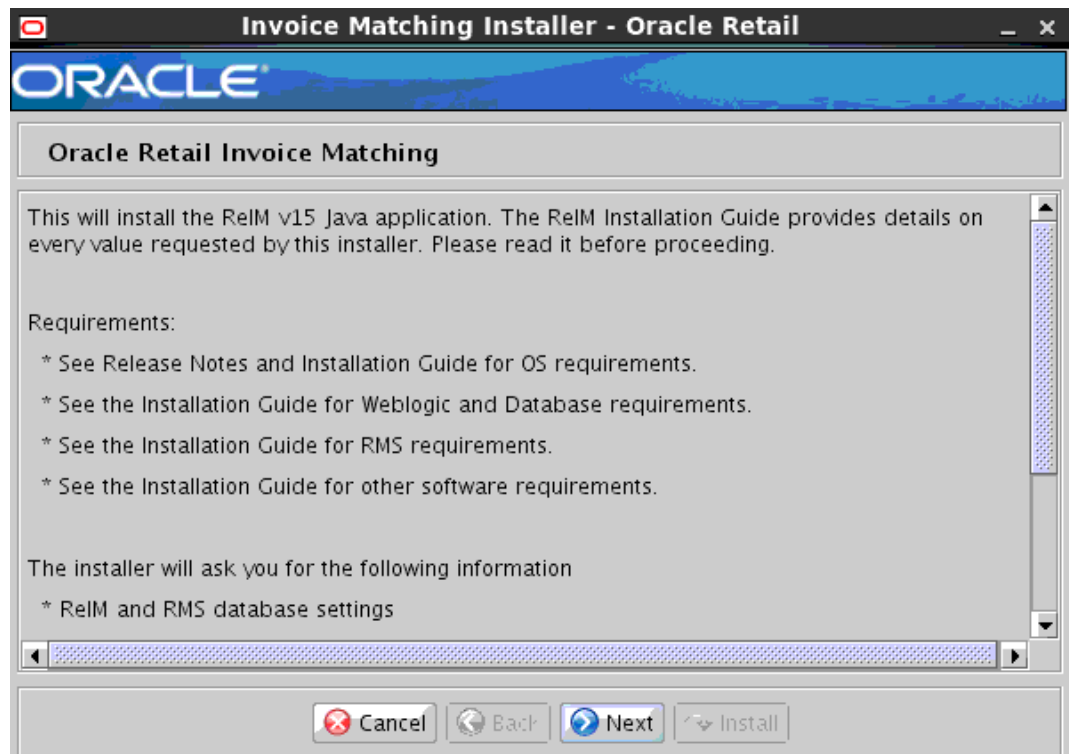


---

## Appendix: ReIM Application Installer Screens

You need the following details about your environment for the installer to successfully deploy the ReIM application. Depending on the options you select, you may not see some screens or fields.

### Screen: Startup



## Analyze Tool

The following screens will only appear if the variable ORPATCH\_ANALYZE has been set to True in the environment.

### Screen: Analyze Tool



Screen: RETAIL\_HOME to Analyze

**Invoice Matching Installer - Oracle Retail**

**ORACLE**

**RETAIL\_HOME to Analyze**

Please enter a RETAIL\_HOME path from a pre-existing installation that you would like to analyze.

RETAIL\_HOME

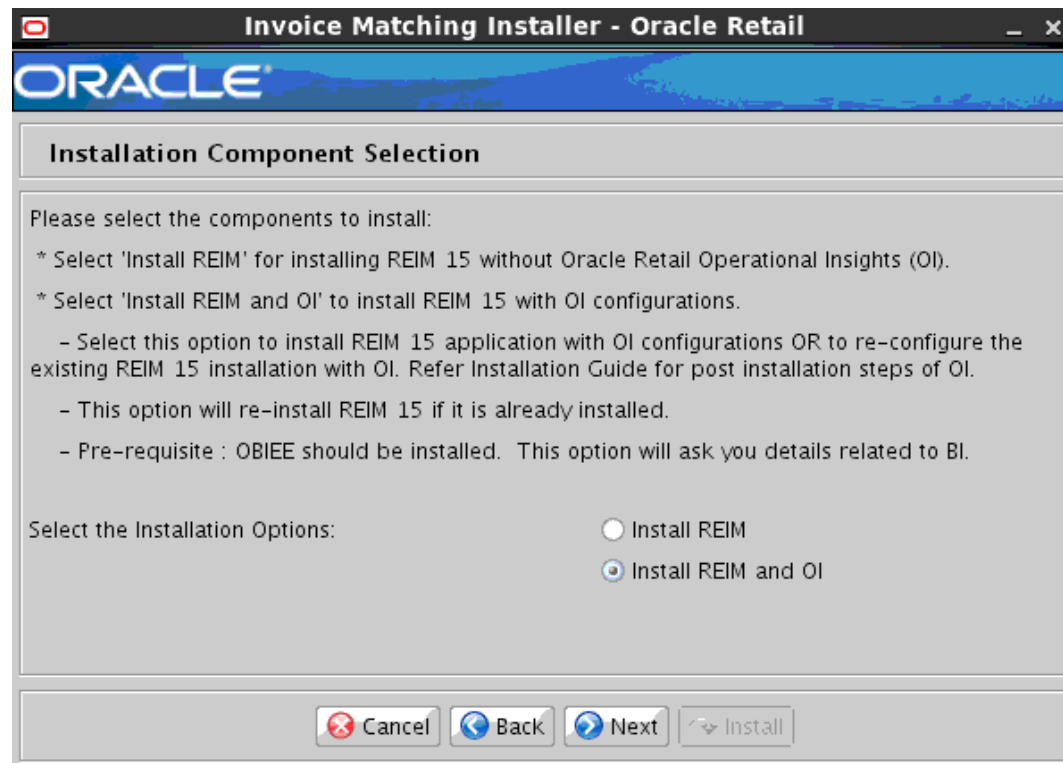
Note: If you proceed to run the analyze tool, Orpatch will be updated in the RETAIL\_HOME you have selected with the latest Orpatch files from this patch. Only generic Orpatch files will be updated, no product patches will be applied.

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | RETAIL_HOME to Analyze                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Field Description</b> | The pre-existing RETAIL_HOME location created and used during REIM installation. This location should contain directories with your installed files as well as the “orpatch” directory. |
| <b>Example</b>           | /path/to/retail_home                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Note</b>              | The Orpatch files in this RETAIL_HOME may need to be updated in order to be able to run the analysis. The Analyze tool will take care of this automatically.                            |

## Application Installer

The following screens will only appear if the variable ORPATCH\_ANALYZE has not been set in the environment.

### Screen: Installation Component Selection



|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Installation Component Selection                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Field Description</b> | Selecting 'Install REIM' will install REIM 15.0.1 without Operational Insights (OI). 'Install REIM and OI' will install REIM along with OI configurations or reconfigure the existing REIM 15.0.1 installation. Note that selecting the second option will require OBIEE details to be entered in the further stages of the installation. |

Screen: ReIM Application RETAIL\_HOME

**Invoice Matching Installer - Oracle Retail**

**ORACLE**

**ReIM Application RETAIL\_HOME**

Please enter the directory where the ReIM application files and batch scripts will be installed. Please keep track of this directory, it should remain in place after installation and will be used to apply future patches.

ReIM Application RETAIL\_HOME

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | ReIM Application RETAIL_HOME                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Field Description</b> | Retail Home is used to keep Orpatch related files, batches etc. by default. Please keep track of this directory, it should remain in place after installation and will be used to apply future patches. |
| <b>Examples</b>          | /path/to/reim_retail_home                                                                                                                                                                               |

### Screen: Host Details

**Invoice Matching Installer - Oracle Retail**

**ORACLE**

**Host Details**

Please enter the hostname that the component(s) will be installed on. This should match your current host.

Hostname

|                          |                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Hostname                                                                                                         |
| <b>Field Description</b> | Provide the hostname where the Retail Home will be installed. This shall match your Application Server hostname. |
| <b>Examples</b>          | apphostname                                                                                                      |

Screen: Security Details

**Invoice Matching Installer - Oracle Retail**

**ORACLE**

**Security Details**

Provide security details for the REIM application

Note: enabling SSL requires that security certificates have been configured and installed for this WebLogic domain. The AdminServer and all managed servers must then be configured to use SSL.

Enable SSL for REIM?

☒ Yes

☐ No

Cancel Back Next Install

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Enable SSL for REIM?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Field Description</b> | <p>Choosing Yes will deploy ReIM using SSL and configure ReIM to use SSL. In this case, SSL must be configured and the ports must be enabled for the AdminServer and ReIM managed servers.</p> <p>Choosing No will deploy and configure ReIM without SSL. In this case the non-SSL ports must be enabled for the AdminServer and for the RPM managed servers.</p> |

# Screen: JDBC Security Details

**JDBC Security Details**

Enabling Secure JDBC requires that security certificates have been configured and installed for this WebLogic domain.

Enable Secure JDBC connection

☒ Yes  
☐ No

Cancel Back Next Install

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Enable Secure JDBC connection                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Field Description</b> | Select Yes to create secured data sources in WebLogic, otherwise choose No. A secure data base connection must already be set up if you want to create a secure data source. |

Screen: Data Source Details

Invoice Matching Installer - Oracle Retail

ORACLE

Data Source Details

Provide the details for the Invoice Matching data source

ReIM/RMS JDBC URL

jdbc:oracle:thin:@(DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS\_LIS

ReIM/RMS schema user

rms01app

ReIM/RMS schema password

.....

Enter the RMS schema owner. This is usually the same as the ReIM/RMS schema entered above

RMS schema owner

rms01

REIM schema user alias

db-alias

(The alias for each username/password pair must be unique)

Cancel

Back

Next

Install

|                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Field Title       | ReIM/RMS JDBC URL                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Field Description | URL used by the ReIM application to access the ReIM/RMS database schema. See <a href="#">Appendix: URL Reference</a> for expected syntax.                                                                                                       |
| Examples          | For Non Secure JDBC Connection: jdbc:oracle:thin:@hostname:1521/dbname<br>For Secure JDBC Connection:<br>jdbc:oracle:thin:@(DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS_LIST=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcps)(HOST=dbhostname)(PORT=2484)))(CONNECT_DATA=(SERVICE_NAME=mydb))) |

|                   |                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Field Title       | ReIM/RMS schema user                                                                                                                     |
| Field Description | RMS database user for accessing the ReIM tables. This should match what was given in the RMS schema field of the RMS database installer. |
| Example           | rms01app                                                                                                                                 |

|                   |                                                                             |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Field Title       | ReIM/RMS schema password                                                    |
| Field Description | Password for the RMS database user entered above to access the ReIM tables. |

|                          |                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | RMS schema owner                                                                                                             |
| <b>Field Description</b> | Database user which owns the RMS and ReIM tables. This usually has the same value as the <b>ReIM/RMS schema</b> field above. |
| <b>Example</b>           | rms01                                                                                                                        |

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | REIM schema user alias                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Field Description</b> | The alias to store the schema credentials.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Example</b>           | db-alias                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Note</b>              | This alias must be unique. Do not use the same value for any other alias fields in the installer. If the same alias is used, entries in the wallet can override each other and cause problems with the application. |

Screen: Secure Data Source Details

**Note:** This screen appears only if you have enabled 'Secure JDBC' for ReIM. Ignore this step in case you have not enabled 'Secure JDBC' for ReIM.

|                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Field Title       | Identity Keystore                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Field Description | Keystores ensure the secure storage and management of private keys and trusted certificate authorities (CAs). This screen lets you provide the keystore to be used for datasource connection These settings help you to manage the security of message transmissions. For further information, please refer <i>MOM security Guide</i> .<br>Location or path where identity keystore file is stored. |
| Field Title       | Identity Keystore Type                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Field Description | Type of the identity keystore used.<br>Exampe: jks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Field Title       | Identity Keystore Passphrase                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Field Description | The password to access the keystore mentioned above.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

|                          |                                                            |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Identity truststore                                        |
| <b>Field Description</b> | Location or path where identity truststore file is stored. |

|                          |                                                       |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Identity truststore Type                              |
| <b>Field Description</b> | Type of the identity truststore used.<br>Example: jks |

|                          |                                                        |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Identity truststore Passphrase                         |
| <b>Field Description</b> | The password to access the truststore mentioned above. |

**Screen: Application Deployment Details**



**Application Deployment Details**

The default values shown below are examples

ReIM app deployment name

Enter the REIM weblogic managed server or cluster.

REIM server/cluster

|                          |                                                                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | ReIM app deployment name                                                     |
| <b>Field Description</b> | Name by which this ReIM application is identified in the application server. |
| <b>Example</b>           | reim15                                                                       |

|                          |                                                      |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | ReIM server/cluster                                  |
| <b>Field Description</b> | Name of the ReIM WebLogic managed server or cluster. |
| <b>Example</b>           | reim-server                                          |

# Screen: WebLogic Administrative User

**Weblogic Administrative User**

Enter the administrative user and password for the Weblogic Server to which the application will be deployed.

Hostname:

Weblogic admin port:

Weblogic admin user:

Weblogic admin password:

Weblogic admin alias:

(The alias for each username/password pair must be unique)

Buttons:

|                          |                                                                    |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Hostname                                                           |
| <b>Field Description</b> | The hostname of the server where the WebLogic server is installed. |
| <b>Example</b>           | Hostname                                                           |

|                          |                                             |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | WebLogic admin port                         |
| <b>Field Description</b> | This is the port of Administration Console. |
| <b>Example</b>           | 23002                                       |

|                          |                                                                                                        |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | WebLogic admin user                                                                                    |
| <b>Field Description</b> | User name of the admin user for the WebLogic instance to which the ReIM application is being deployed. |
| <b>Example</b>           | weblogic                                                                                               |

|                          |                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | WebLogic admin password                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Field Description</b> | Password for the WebLogic admin user. You chose this password when you created the WebLogic instance or when you started the instance for the first time. |

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | WebLogic admin alias                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Field Description</b> | An alias for the WebLogic admin user.                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Example</b>           | weblogic-alias                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Note</b>              | This alias must be unique. Do not use the same value for any other alias fields in the installer. If the same alias is used, entries in the wallet can override each other and problems issues with the application. |

**Screen: Webservice Account Validation Details**

**Invoice Matching Installer - Oracle Retail**

**ORACLE®**

**Webservice Account Validation Details**

Provide the details for the Invoice Matching Webservice Account Validation URL

Please provide Account Validation Web Service URL

Should Account Validation Web Service invocation be done with credentials?

☒ Yes  
☐ No

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Account Validation Web Service URL                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Field Description</b> | The URL for validating Web service accounts. This information is from the financial application to which you are integrating (for example, Oracle E-Business Suite). Leave this field blank if there is no integration with a financial application.          |
| <b>Example</b>           | <a href="https://hostname:18008/fin-GIAccountValidation-AppServiceDecorator/ProxyService/GIAccountValidationAppServiceProxy?wsdl">https://hostname:18008/fin-GIAccountValidation-AppServiceDecorator/ProxyService/GIAccountValidationAppServiceProxy?wsdl</a> |

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Should Account Validation Web Service invocation be done with credentials?                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Field Description</b> | If the webservices entered in the above screen have security validation, choose Yes.<br>Choosing Yes will navigate you to the screen asking for Webservice Account Validation Credentials. Choosing No will skip the Webservice Account Validation Credentials screen |

Screen: Webservice Account Validation Credentials

**Invoice Matching Installer - Oracle Retail**

**ORACLE®**

**Webservice Account Validation Credentials**

Provide the credentials for the Invoice Matching Webservice Account Validation.

Webservice Account Validation user: retail.user

Webservice Account Validation password: .....

Webservice Account Validation user alias: WAV-alias

(The alias for each username/password pair must be unique)

Buttons: Cancel, Back, Next, Install

---

**Note:** This screen appears only if you have enabled WAV Credentials for ReIM. Ignore this step in case you have not enabled WAV Credentials for ReIM.

---

|                          |                                                    |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Webservice Account Validation user                 |
| <b>Field Description</b> | Enter the username for validating the Web service. |
| <b>Example</b>           | retail.user                                        |

|                          |                                                                               |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Webservice Account Validation Password                                        |
| <b>Field Description</b> | The password of the above username which is used to validate the Web service. |

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Webservice Account Validation Alias                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Field Description</b> | The alias for the Web service account user name.                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Example</b>           | WAV-alias                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Note</b>              | This alias must be unique. Do not use the same value for any other alias fields in the installer. If the same alias is used, entries in the wallet can override each other and cause problems with the application. |

Screen: Enable Account Validation Drill Forward Credentials

Invoice Matching Installer - Oracle Retail

ORACLE®

Enable Account Validation Drill Forward Credentials

Provide the details for the Invoice Matching Webservice Account Validation Drill Forward Credentials for REIM

Please provide Drill Forward Web Service URL

Should Drill Forward Web Service invocation be done with credentials?

☒ Yes  
☐ No

Cancel

Back

Next

Install

|                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Field Title       | Drill Forward Web Service URL                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Field Description | The Web service drilling forward URL used for the ReIM application. This information is from the financial application to which you are integrating (for example, Oracle E-Business Suite). Leave this field blank if there is no integration with a financial application. |
| Example           | https://hostname:18008/fin-DrillBackForwardUrl-AppServiceDecorator/ProxyService/DrillBackForwardUrlAppServiceProxy?wsdl                                                                                                                                                     |

|                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Field Title       | Drill Forward Web Service Invocation be done with credentials?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Field Description | <p>If the Drill Forward Web Service URL entered in the above screen have security validation, choose Yes.</p> <p>Choosing Yes will navigate you to the screen asking for Drill Forward Web Service URL validation credentials. Choosing No will skip the Drill Forward Web Service URL Validation Credentials screen</p> |

# Sreen: Webservice Account Validation Drill Forward Credentials

**Invoice Matching Installer - Oracle Retail**

**ORACLE®**

**Webservice Account Validation Drill Forward Credentials**

Provide the details for the Invoice Matching Drill Forward URL.

WAV Drill Forward user: retail.user

WAV Drill Forward password: .....

WAV Drill Forward user alias: WAVD-alias

(The alias for each username/password pair must be unique)

Buttons: Cancel, Back, Next, Install

**Note:** This screen appears only if you have enabled WAVDF Credentials for ReIM. Ignore this step in case you have not enabled WAVDF Credentials for ReIM.

|                          |                                                                 |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Webservice Account Validation Drill Forward user                |
| <b>Field Description</b> | Enter the username for validating the Web service Drill Forward |
| <b>Example</b>           | retail.user                                                     |

|                          |                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Webservice Account Validation Drill Forward Password                                                           |
| <b>Field Description</b> | The password of the above username which is used to validate the Web service Account Validation Drill Forward. |

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Webservice Account Validation Drill Forward user alias                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Field Description</b> | The alias for the Web service account drill forward user name.                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Example</b>           | WAVD-alias                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Note</b>              | This alias must be unique. Do not use the same value for any other alias fields in the installer. If the same alias is used, entries in the wallet can override each other and cause problems with the application. |

## Screen: Batch User Credentials

**Batch User Credentials**

Provide the credentials for the Batch User

Batch user: ADMIN

Batch User password: .....

Batch user alias: batch-alias

(The alias for each username/password pair must be unique)

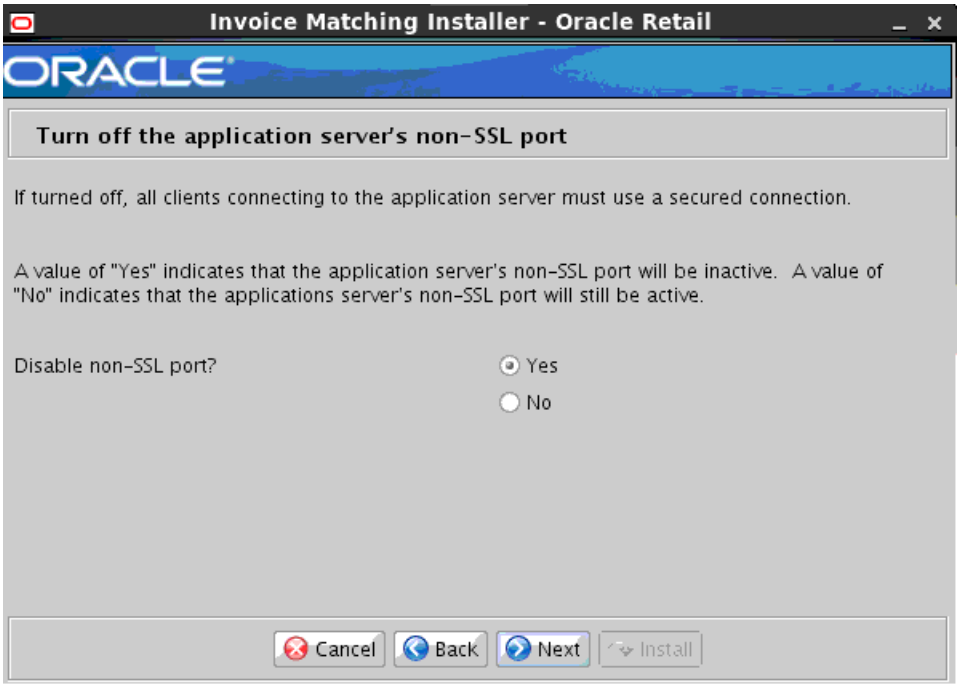
Buttons: Cancel, Back, Next, Install

|                          |                                                                 |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Batch User                                                      |
| <b>Field Description</b> | This shall be a valid user that can login into the application. |
| <b>Example</b>           | REIM_ADMIN                                                      |

|                          |                                                               |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Batch User Password                                           |
| <b>Field Description</b> | The password of the user that can login into the application. |

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Batch User Alias                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Field Description</b> | The alias for the user running ReIM batch. This alias is part of ORACLE wallet implementation. You will use this alias when running ReIM batch scripts.                                                             |
| <b>Example</b>           | batch-alias                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Note</b>              | This alias must be unique. Do not use the same value for any other alias fields in the installer. If the same alias is used, entries in the wallet can override each other and cause problems with the application. |

Screen: Turn off the application server's non-SSL port



**Note:** This screen appears only if you have enabled SSL for ReIM. Ignore this step in case you have not enabled SSL for ReIM.

|                   |                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Field Title       | Disable non-SSL port?                                                                                                                   |
| Field Description | Choosing Yes disables the non SSL port on the managed server. Choosing no will the leave the non SSL port of the managed server active. |

# Screen: OHS Web Tier

**Invoice Matching Installer - Oracle Retail**

**ORACLE**

**OHS Web Tier**

Are you running an OHS web tier for use in Oracle Single Sign-On and/or a Clustered Environment?

☐ Yes

☒ No

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | Are you running OHS Web Tier for use in Oracle Single Sign-on?                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Field Description</b> | Selecting the option 'Yes' will configure all the application URLs delivered by this installer with the OHS webtier hostname and port that will be entered in the next screen. Selecting option 'No' will result in application URLs having default ports. |

### Screen: OHS Web Tier Details

This screen appears only if you have selected Yes in the previous screen.

**Invoice Matching Installer - Oracle Retail**

**ORACLE**

**OHS Web Tier Details**

Please enter the OHS web tier details.

OHS web tier connection protocol ☐ http ☒ https

OHS web tier host

OHS web tier port

|                          |                                                      |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | OHS web Tier connection protocol                     |
| <b>Field Description</b> | Connection protocol for OHS web tier – http or https |

|                          |                            |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | OHS web tier host          |
| <b>Field Description</b> | Host name for OHS web tier |
| <b>Example</b>           | ohshostname                |

|                          |                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | OHS web tier port            |
| <b>Field Description</b> | Port number for OHS web tier |
| <b>Example</b>           | 7002                         |

**Screen: OBIEE Details**

This screen will appear only if you have selected the option 'Install REIM and OI' in the 'Installation Component Selection' screen.

The screenshot shows the 'OBIEE Details' configuration window. It includes the following fields and options:

- OBIEE connection protocol:** Radio buttons for ☒ http and ☐ https.
- OBIEE hostname:** Text field containing 'obieehostname'.
- OBIEE Managed Server port:** Text field containing '7333'.
- OBIEE SSO port:** Empty text field.
- OBIEE Impersonate User Name:** Text field containing 'BllImpersonateUser'.
- OBIEE Impersonate User Alias:** Text field containing 'ImpersonateUserAlias'.
- OBIEE Impersonate User Password:** Password field with masked characters '.....'.
- OBIEE Static Resources Location:** Text field containing 'http://obieehostname:1550port1/analytic...'.

At the bottom, there are four buttons: 'Cancel', 'Back', 'Next', and 'Install'.

|                          |                                                                    |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | OBIEE connection protocol                                          |
| <b>Field Description</b> | Connection protocol used while connecting to OBIEE – http or https |

|                          |                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | OBIEE Hostname                                                                                   |
| <b>Field Description</b> | OBIEE Hostname where you have installed/planning to install the Operational Insights Dashboards. |
| <b>Example</b>           | obieehostname                                                                                    |

|                          |                                           |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | OBIEE Managed Server Port                 |
| <b>Field Description</b> | The port of the Oracle BI EE installation |
| <b>Example</b>           | 7333                                      |

|                          |                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | OBIEE SSO Port                                                                                              |
| <b>Field Description</b> | The SSO port where OBIEE is configured, if SSO is enabled. If you are not using SSO, leave the field blank. |
| <b>Example</b>           | 7780                                                                                                        |

|                          |                                                                                             |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | OBIEE Impersonate User Name                                                                 |
| <b>Field Description</b> | The username that has been configured on the Oracle BI EE with the impersonate permissions. |
| <b>Example</b>           | BIImpersonateUser                                                                           |

|                          |                                         |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | OBIEE Impersonate User Alias            |
| <b>Field Description</b> | An alias for the OBIEE Impersonate User |
| <b>Example</b>           | ImpersonateUserAlias                    |

|                          |                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | OBIEE Impersonate User Password                                                                                          |
| <b>Field Description</b> | The password associated with the username that has been configured on the Oracle BI EE with the impersonate permissions. |

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Field Title</b>       | OBIEE Static Resources Location                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Field Description</b> | <p>The path of the location where the static resources are available.</p> <p>For non-SSO environments use the following URL.</p> <p><a href="http://&lt;obiee_host&gt;:&lt;obiee_port&gt;/analytics">http://&lt;obiee_host&gt;:&lt;obiee_port&gt;/analytics</a></p> <p>For SSO environments, use the host and port of the Oracle Web Tier.</p> <p><a href="http://&lt;web_tier_host&gt;:&lt;web_tier_port&gt;">http://&lt;web_tier_host&gt;:&lt;web_tier_port&gt;</a></p> |
| <b>Example</b>           | http://obieehostname:7333/analytics                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

# Screen: Installation Summary



| Summary of Installation         |                |
|---------------------------------|----------------|
| App Name                        | reim15         |
| Context Root                    | reim           |
| Weblogic Managed Server/Cluster | reim-server    |
| App Server Host                 | hostname       |
| Weblogic Admin Port             | 23002          |
| Weblogic Admin User             | weblogic       |
| Weblogic Admin Alias            | weblogic-alias |

---

## Appendix: Installer Silent Mode

Once you have a managed server that is configured and started, you can run the REIM application installer. This installer configures and deploys the REIM application.

---

**Note:** It is recommended that the installer be run as the same UNIX account which owns the application server ORACLE\_HOME files.

---

1. Change directories to INSTALL\_DIR/reim/application.
2. Set the ORACLE\_HOME, JAVA\_HOME, and WEBLOGIC\_DOMAIN\_HOME environment variables. ORACLE\_HOME should point to your WebLogic installation. JAVA\_HOME should point to the Java JDK 1.7+. This is typically the same JDK which is being used by the WebLogic domain where Application is getting installed. WEBLOGIC\_DOMAIN\_HOME should point to the full path of the domain into which REIM will be installed.
3. If a secured datasource is going to be configured you also need to set "ANT\_OPTS" so the installer can access the key and trust store that is used for the datasource security:

```
export ANT_OPTS="-Djavax.net.ssl.keyStore=<PATH TO KEY STORE> -
Djavax.net.ssl.keyStoreType=jks -Djavax.net.ssl.keyStorePassword=<KEYSTORE
PASSWORD> -Djavax.net.ssl.trustStore=<PATH TO TRUST STORE> -
Djavax.net.ssl.trustStoreType=jks -
Djavax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword=<TRUSTSTORE PASSWORD>"
```

An example of this would be:

```
export ANT_OPTS="-
Djavax.net.ssl.keyStore/u00/webadmin/product/identity.keystore -
Djavax.net.ssl.keyStoreType=jks -Djavax.net.ssl.keyStorePassword=retail123 -
Djavax.net.ssl.trustStore/u00/webadmin/product/identity.truststore -
Djavax.net.ssl.trustStoreType=jks -
Djavax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword=retail123"
```

- If you are using an X server such as Exceed, set the DISPLAY environment variable so that you can run the installer in GUI mode (recommended). If you are not using an X server, or the GUI is too slow over your network, unset DISPLAY for text mode.
- Edit the ant.install.properties file and correct any invalid settings that may have caused the installer to fail in its previous run.

---

**Note:** The password properties need to be copied over from the ant.install.properties.sample to the ant.install.properties file in this case and update with the values.

---

- If the application needs to be installed in silent mode copy the ant.install.properties.sample to ant.install.properties. Provide values for each property including the passwords
- Run the installation command "./install.sh silent". This launches the installer in silent mode. A detailed installation log file is created (reiminstall.<timestamp>.log).
- Remove the values for password once the installation is completed successfully.



---

## Appendix: Single Sign-On for WebLogic

Single Sign-On (SSO) is a term for the ability to sign onto multiple Web applications via a single user ID/Password. There are many implementations of SSO. Oracle provides an implementation with Oracle Access Manager.

Most, if not all, SSO technologies use a session cookie to hold encrypted data passed to each application. The SSO infrastructure has the responsibility to validate these cookies and, possibly, update this information. The user is directed to log on only if the cookie is not present or has become invalid. These session cookies are restricted to a single browser session and are never written to a file.

Another facet of SSO is how these technologies redirect a user's Web browser to various servlets. The SSO implementation determines when and where these redirects occur and what the final screen shown to the user is.

Most SSO implementations are performed in an application's infrastructure and not in the application logic itself. Applications that leverage infrastructure managed authentication (such as deployment specifying Basic or Form authentication) typically have little or no code changes when adapted to work in an SSO environment.

### What Do I Need for Single Sign-On?

A Single Sign-On system involves the integration of several components, including Oracle Identity Management and Oracle Access Management. This includes the following components:

- An Oracle Internet Directory (OID) LDAP server, used to store user, role, security, and other information. OID uses an Oracle database as the back-end storage of this information.
- An Oracle Access Manager (OAM) 11g Release 2 server and administrative console for implementing and configuring policies for single sign-on.
- A Policy Enforcement Agent such as Oracle Access Manager 11g Agent (WebGate), used to authenticate the user and create the Single Sign-On cookies.
- Oracle Directory Services Manager (ODSM) application in OIM11g, used to administer users and group information. This information may also be loaded or modified via standard LDAP Data Interchange Format (LDIF) scripts.
- Additional administrative scripts for configuring the OAM system and registering HTTP servers.

Additional WebLogic managed servers will be needed to deploy the business applications leveraging the Single Sign-On technology.

### Can Oracle Access Manager Work with Other SSO Implementations?

Yes, Oracle Access Manager has the ability to interoperate with many other SSO implementations, but some restrictions exist.

## Oracle Single Sign-on Terms and Definitions

The following terms apply to single sign-on.

### Authentication

Authentication is the process of establishing a user's identity. There are many types of authentication. The most common authentication process involves a user ID and password.

### Dynamically Protected URLs

A Dynamically Protected URL is a URL whose implementing application is aware of the Oracle Access Manager environment. The application may allow a user limited access when the user has not been authenticated. Applications that implement dynamic protection typically display a Login link to provide user authentication and gain greater access to the application's resources.

### Oracle Identity Management (OIM) and Oracle Access Manager (OAM) for 11g

Oracle Identity Management (OIM) 11g includes Oracle Internet Directory and ODSM. Oracle Access Manager (OAM) 11g R2 should be used for SSO using WebGate. Oracle Forms 11g contains Oracle HTTP server and other Retail Applications will use Oracle WebTier11g for HTTP Server.

### MOD\_WEBLOGIC

mod\_WebLogic operates as a module within the HTTP server that allows requests to be proxied from the OracleHTTP server to the Oracle WebLogic server.

### Oracle Access Manager 11g Agent (WebGate)

Oracle WebGates are policy enforcement agents which reside with relying parties and delegate authentication and authorization tasks to OAM servers.

### Oracle Internet Directory

Oracle Internet Directory (OID) is an LDAP-compliant directory service. It contains user ids, passwords, group membership, privileges, and other attributes for users who are authenticated using Oracle Access Manager.

### Partner Application

A partner application is an application that delegates authentication to the Oracle Identity Management Infrastructure. One such partner application is the Oracle HTTP Server (OHS) supplied with Oracle Forms Server or WebTier11g Server if using other Retail Applications other than Oracle Forms Applications.

All partner applications must be registered with Oracle Access Manager (OAM) 11g. An output product of this registration is a configuration file the partner application uses to verify a user has been previously authenticated.

### Statically Protected URLs

A URL is considered to be Statically Protected when an Oracle HTTP server is configured to limit access to this URL to only SSO authenticated users. Any unauthenticated attempt to access a Statically Protected URL results in the display of a login page or an error page to the user.

Servlets, static HTML pages, and JSP pages may be statically protected.

## What Single Sign-On is not

Single Sign-On is NOT a user ID/password mapping technology.

However, some applications can store and retrieve user IDs and passwords for non-SSO applications within an OID LDAP server. An example of this is the Oracle Forms Web Application framework, which maps Single Sign-On user IDs to a database logins on a per-application basis.

## How Oracle Single Sign-On Works

Oracle Access Manager involves several different components. These are:

- The Oracle Access Manager (OAM) server, which is responsible for the back-end authentication of the user.
- The Oracle Internet Directory LDAP server, which stores user IDs, passwords, and group (role) membership.
- The Oracle Access Manager Agent associated with the Web application, which verifies and controls browser redirection to the Oracle Access Manager server.
- If the Web application implements dynamic protection, then the Web application itself is involved with the OAM system.

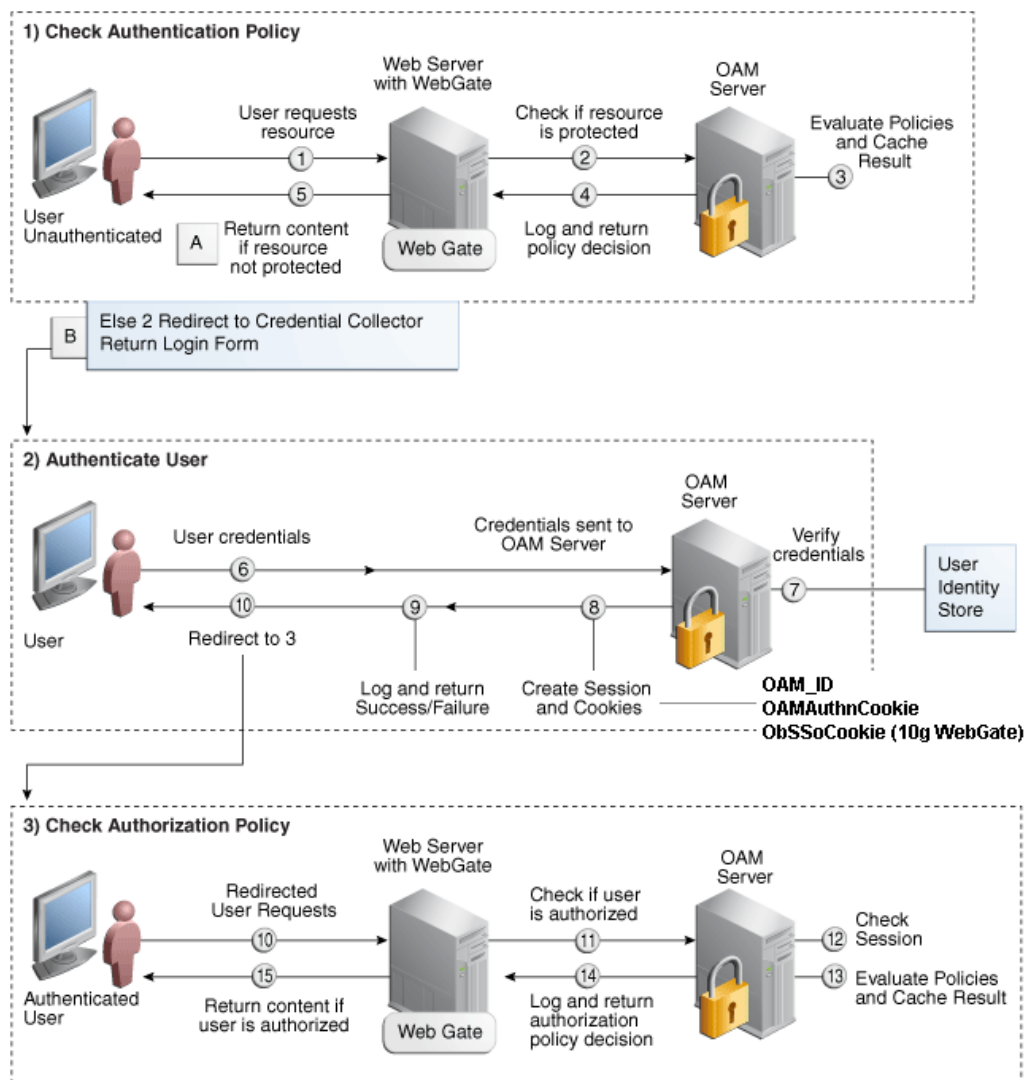
### About SSO Login Processing with OAM Agents

1. The user requests a resource.
2. Webgate forwards the request to OAM for policy evaluation
3. OAM:
  - a. Checks for the existence of an SSO cookie.
  - b. Checks policies to determine if the resource is protected and if so, how?
4. OAM Server logs and returns the decision
5. Webgate responds as follows:
  - **Unprotected Resource:** Resource is served to the user
  - **Protected Resource:**  
Resource is redirected to the credential collector.  
The login form is served based on the authentication policy.  
Authentication processing begins
6. User sends credentials
7. OAM verifies credentials
8. OAM starts the session and creates the following host-based cookies:
  - **One per partner:** OAMAuthnCookie set by 11g WebGates using authentication token received from the OAM Server after successful authentication.  
**Note:** A valid cookie is required for a session.
  - One for OAM Server: OAM\_ID
9. OAM logs Success or Failure.
10. Credential collector redirects to WebGate and authorization processing begins.
11. WebGate prompts OAM to look up policies, compare them to the user's identity, and determine the user's level of authorization.
12. OAM logs policy decision and checks the session cookie.
13. OAM Server evaluates authorization policies and cache the result.
14. OAM Server logs and returns decisions

15. WebGate responds as follows:

- If the authorization policy allows access, the desired content or applications are served to the user.
- If the authorization policy denies access, the user is redirected to another URL determined by the administrator.

### SSO Login Processing with OAM Agents



## Installation Overview

Installing an Oracle Retail supported Single Sign-On installation using OAM11g requires installation of the following:

1. Oracle Internet Directory (OID) LDAP server and the Oracle Directory Services Manager. They are typically installed using the Installer of Oracle Identity Management . The ODSM application can be used for user and realm management within OID.
2. Oracle Access Manager 11gR2 has to be installed and configured.
3. Additional midtier instances (such as Oracle Forms 11gr2) for Oracle Retail applications based on Oracle Forms technologies (such as RMS). These instances must be registered with the OAM installed in step 2.
4. Additional application servers to deploy other Oracle Retail applications and performing application specific initialization and deployment activities must be registered with OAM installed in step 2.

### Infrastructure Installation and Configuration

The Infrastructure installation for Oracle Access Manager (OAM) is dependent on the environment and requirements for its use. Deploying Oracle Access Manager (OAM) to be used in a test environment does not have the same availability requirements as for a production environment. Similarly, the Oracle Internet Directory (OID) LDAP server can be deployed in a variety of different configurations. See the *Oracle Identity Management Installation Guide*11g.

### OID User Data

Oracle Internet Directory is an [LDAP v3](#) compliant directory server. It provides standards-based user definitions out of the box.

Customers with existing corporate LDAP implementations may need to synchronize user information between their existing LDAP directory servers and OID. OID supports standard LDIF file formats and provides a JNDI compliant set of Java classes as well. Moreover, OID provides additional synchronization and replication facilities to integrate with other corporate LDAP implementations.

Each user ID stored in OID has a specific record containing user specific information. For role-based access, groups of users can be defined and managed within OID. Applications can thus grant access based on group (role) membership saving administration time and providing a more secure implementation.

## User Management

User Management consists of displaying, creating, updating or removing user information. There are many methods of managing an LDAP directory including LDIF scripts or Oracle Directory Services Manager (ODSM) available for OID11g.

### ODSM

Oracle Directory Services Manager (ODSM) is a Web-based application used in OID11g is designed for both administrators and users which enables you to configure the structure of the directory, define objects in the directory, add and configure users, groups, and other entries. ODSM is the interface you use to manage entries, schema, security, adapters, extensions, and other directory features.

### **LDIF Scripts**

Script based user management can be used to synchronize data between multiple LDAP servers. The standard format for these scripts is the LDAP Data Interchange Format (LDIF). OID supports LDIF script for importing and exporting user information. LDIF scripts may also be used for bulk user load operations.

### **User Data Synchronization**

The user store for Oracle Access Manager resides within the Oracle Internet Directory (OID) LDAP server. Oracle Retail applications may require additional information attached to a user name for application-specific purposes and may be stored in an application-specific database. Currently, there are no Oracle Retail tools for synchronizing changes in OID stored information with application-specific user stores. Implementers should plan appropriate time and resources for this process. Oracle Retail strongly suggests that you configure any Oracle Retail application using an LDAP for its user store to point to the same OID server used with Oracle Access Manager.

---

---

## Appendix: URL Reference

Both the database schema and application installers for the Invoice Matching product require certain URLs, including the following.

### JDBC URL for a Database

Used by the Java application and by the installer to connect to the database.

Thick Client Syntax: jdbc:oracle:thin:@<sid>

<sid>: system identifier for the database

---

---

**Example:** jdbc:oracle:oci:@mysid

---

---

Thin Client Syntax: jdbc:oracle:thin:@<host>:<port>/servicename<host>: hostname of the database server

<port>: database listener port

< servicename>: Service Name for the database

---

---

**Example:** jdbc:oracle:thin:@myhost:1521/servicename

---

---



---

## Appendix: BI User and Group LDIF Entries

---

### BI\_User.ldif Entries

```
dn: cn=BISystemUser,cn=Users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com
orclsamaccountname: BUYER
givenname: BISystemUser
sn: BISystemUser
userpassword: welcome1
mail: BISystemUser@rgbu.generated.oracle.com
displayname: BISystemUser
uid: BISystemUser
objectclass: inetOrgPerson
objectclass: organizationalPerson
objectclass: person
objectclass: top
objectclass: orclUser
objectclass: orclUserV2
objectclass: orclIDXPperson
orclpassword: <your password here>
orclactivestartdate: 20140821000000z
cn: BISystemUser
description: A user for the 'Buyer' role.
```

```
dn: cn=BIImpersonateUser,cn=Users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com
orclsamaccountname: BUYER
givenname: BIImpersonateUser
sn: BIImpersonateUser
userpassword: welcome1
mail: BIImpersonateUser@rgbu.generated.oracle.com
displayname: BIImpersonateUser
uid: BIImpersonateUser
objectclass: inetOrgPerson
objectclass: organizationalPerson
objectclass: person
objectclass: top
objectclass: orclUser
objectclass: orclUserV2
objectclass: orclIDXPperson
orclpassword: <your password here>
orclactivestartdate: 20140821000000z
cn: BIImpersonateUser
description: A user for the 'Buyer' role.
```

---

**Note:** Change the userpassword with your password before loading the ldif into the LDAP.

---

## BI\_Group.Idifs Entries

dn: cn=BIAdministrators,cn=groups,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com  
displayname: OBIEE Users  
description: OBIEE Users  
objectclass: top  
objectclass: groupOfUniqueNames  
objectclass: orclGroup  
uniquemember: cn=bisystemuser,cn=users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com  
uniquemember: cn=orcladmin  
uniquemember: cn=resa\_su,cn=users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com  
uniquemember: cn=retail.user,cn=users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com  
cn: BIAdministrators

dn: cn=BISystemUsers,cn=groups,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com  
displayname: OBIEE Users  
description: OBIEE Users  
objectclass: top  
objectclass: groupOfUniqueNames  
objectclass: orclGroup  
uniquemember: cn=bisystemuser,cn=users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com  
uniquemember: cn=orcladmin  
uniquemember: cn=resa\_su,cn=users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com  
uniquemember: cn=retail.user,cn=users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com  
cn: BISystemUsers

dn: cn=BIAuthors,cn=groups,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com  
displayname: OBIEE Users  
description: OBIEE Users  
objectclass: top  
objectclass: groupOfUniqueNames  
objectclass: orclGroup  
uniquemember: cn=bisystemuser,cn=users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com  
uniquemember: cn=orcladmin  
uniquemember: cn=resa\_su,cn=users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com  
uniquemember: cn=retail.user,cn=users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com  
cn: BIAuthors

dn: cn=BIConsumers,cn=groups,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com  
uniquemember: cn=bisystemuser,cn=users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com  
uniquemember: cn=orcladmin  
uniquemember: cn=resa\_su,cn=users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com  
uniquemember: cn=retail.user,cn=users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com  
orclnormdn: cn=biconsumers,cn=groups,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com  
displayname: OBIEE Users  
objectclass: top  
objectclass: groupOfUniqueNames  
objectclass: orclGroup  
modifytimestamp: 20140925090248z  
modifiersname: cn=orcladmin  
cn: BIConsumers  
creatorsname: cn=orcladmin  
createtimestamp: 20140822142024z  
description: OBIEE Users

---

## Appendix: Common Installation Errors

This section provides some common errors encountered during installation of ReIM.

### ConcurrentModificationException in Installer GUI

#### Symptom

In GUI mode, the Errors tab shows the following error:

```
java.util.ConcurrentModificationException
 at
java.util.AbstractList$Itr.checkForComodification(AbstractList.java:448)
 at java.util.AbstractList$Itr.next(AbstractList.java:419)
... etc
```

#### Solution

You can ignore this error. It is related to third-party Java Swing code for rendering of the installer GUI and does not affect the retail product installation.

### Warning: Could not find X Input Context

#### Symptom

The following text appears in the console window during execution of the installer in GUI mode:

```
Couldn't find X Input Context
```

#### Solution

This message is harmless and can be ignored.

### GUI screens fail to open when running Installer

#### Symptom

When running the installer in GUI mode, the screens fail to open and the installer ends, returning to the console without an error message. The ant.install.log file contains this error:

```
Fatal exception: Width (0) and height (0) cannot be <= 0
java.lang.IllegalArgumentException: Width (0) and height (0) cannot be <= 0
```

#### Solution

This error is encountered when Antinstaller is used in GUI mode with certain X Servers. To work around this issue, copy ant.install.properties.sample to ant.install.properties and rerun the installer.

## Hostname Verification Error when SSL is used

### Symptom:

The Application installer fails saying that the reim-server could not restart with the below error.

```
[exec] This Exception occurred at Thu Nov 14 04:20:39 EST 2013.
[exec] javax.naming.CommunicationException [Root exception is
java.net.ConnectException: t3s://msp52420:15004: Destination unreachable; nested
exception is:
[exec] javax.net.ssl.SSLKeyException: [Security:090504]Certificate chain
received from msp52420 - 10.141.53.240 failed hostname verification check.
Certificate contained msp52420.us.oracle.com but check expected msp52420; No
available router to destination]
```

### Solution:

Provide the complete hostname in the “Host Details” field of the installer screen (i.e., msp52420.us.oracle.com instead of msp5240) and the install will go through successfully.

---

## Appendix: Setting Up Password Stores with wallets/credential stores

As part of an application installation, administrators must set up password stores for user accounts using wallets/credential stores. Some password stores must be installed on the application database side. While the installer handles much of this process, the administrators must perform some additional steps.

Password stores for the application and application server user accounts must also be installed; however, the installer takes care of this entire process.

ORACLE Retail Merchandising applications now have 3 different types of password stores. They are database wallets, java wallets, and database credential stores. Background and how to administer them below are explained in this appendix

### About Database Password Stores and Oracle Wallet

Oracle databases have allowed other users on the server to see passwords in case database connect strings (username/password@db) were passed to programs. In the past, users could navigate to `ps -ef|grep <username>` to see the password if the password was supplied in the command line when calling a program.

To make passwords more secure, Oracle Retail has implemented the Oracle Software Security Assurance (OSSA) program. Sensitive information such as user credentials now must be encrypted and stored in a secure location. This location is called password stores or wallets. These password stores are secure software containers that store the encrypted user credentials.

Users can retrieve the credentials using aliases that were set up when encrypting and storing the user credentials in the password store. For example, if username/password@db is entered in the command line argument and the alias is called db\_username, the argument to a program is as follows:

```
sqlplus /@db_username
```

This would connect to the database as it did previously, but it would hide the password from any system user.

After this is configured, as in the example above, the application installation and the other relevant scripts are no longer needed to use embedded usernames and passwords. This reduces any security risks that may exist because usernames and passwords are no longer exposed.

When the installation starts, all the necessary user credentials are retrieved from the Oracle Wallet based on the alias name associated with the user credentials.

There are three different types of password stores. One type explain in the next section is for database connect strings used in program arguments (such as sqlplus /@db\_username). The others are for Java application installation and application use.

## Setting Up Password Stores for Database User Accounts

After the database is installed and the default database user accounts are set up, administrators must set up a password store using the Oracle wallet. This involves assigning an alias for the username and associated password for each database user account. The alias is used later during the application installation. This password store must be created on the system where the application server and database client are installed.

This section describes the steps you must take to set up a wallet and the aliases for the database user accounts. For more information on configuring authentication and password stores, see the *Oracle Database Security Guide*.

---

**Note:** In this section, `<wallet_location>` is a placeholder text for illustration purposes. Before running the command, ensure that you specify the path to the location where you want to create and store the wallet.

---

To set up a password store for the database user accounts, perform the following steps:

1. Create a wallet using the following command:

```
mkstore -wrl <wallet_location> -create
```

After you run the command, a prompt appears. Enter a password for the Oracle Wallet in the prompt.

---

**Note:** The `mkstore` utility is included in the Oracle Database Client installation.

---

The wallet is created with the auto-login feature enabled. This feature enables the database client to access the wallet contents without using the password. For more information, refer to the *Oracle Database Advanced Security Administrator's Guide*.

2. Create the database connection credentials in the wallet using the following command:

```
mkstore -wrl <wallet_location> -createCredential <alias-name> <database-user-name>
```

After you run the command, a prompt appears. Enter the password associated with the database user account in the prompt.

3. Repeat Step 2 for all the database user accounts.

4. Update the `sqlnet.ora` file to include the following statements:

```
WALLET_LOCATION = (SOURCE = (METHOD = FILE) (METHOD_DATA = (DIRECTORY =
<wallet_location>)))
SQLNET.WALLET_OVERRIDE = TRUE
SSL_CLIENT_AUTHENTICATION = FALSE
```

5. Update the `tnsnames.ora` file to include the following entry for each alias name to be set up.

```
<alias-name> =
 (DESCRIPTION =
 (ADDRESS_LIST =
 (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP) (HOST = <host>) (PORT = <port>))
)
 (CONNECT_DATA =
 (SERVICE_NAME = <service>)
)
)
```

In the previous example, <alias-name>, <host>, <port>, and <service> are placeholder text for illustration purposes. Ensure that you replace these with the relevant values.

## Setting up Wallets for Database User Accounts

The following examples show how to set up wallets for database user accounts for the following applications:

- [For RMS, RWMS, RPM Batch using sqlplus or sqlldr, RETL, RMS, RWMS, and ARI](#)

### For RMS, RWMS, RPM Batch using sqlplus or sqlldr, RETL, RMS, RWMS, and ARI

To set up wallets for database user accounts, do the following.

1. Create a new directory called wallet under your folder structure.

```
cd /projects/rms15/dev/
mkdir .wallet
```

---

**Note:** The default permissions of the wallet allow only the owner to use it, ensuring the connection information is protected. If you want other users to be able to use the connection, you must adjust permissions appropriately to ensure only authorized users have access to the wallet.

---

2. Create a sqlnet.ora in the wallet directory with the following content.

```
WALLET_LOCATION = (SOURCE = (METHOD = FILE) (METHOD_DATA =
(DIRECTORY = /projects/rms15/dev/.wallet)))
SQLNET.WALLET_OVERRIDE=TRUE
SSL_CLIENT_AUTHENTICATION=FALSE
```

---

**Note:** WALLET\_LOCATION must be on line 1 in the file.

---

3. Setup a tnsnames.ora in the wallet directory. This tnsnames.ora includes the standard tnsnames.ora file. Then, add two custom tns\_alias entries that are only for use with the wallet. For example, sqlplus /@dvols29\_rms01user.

```
ifile = /u00/oracle/product/12.1.0.2/network/admin/tnsnames.ora
```

Examples for a NON pluggable db:

```
dvols29_rms01user =
 (DESCRIPTION = (ADDRESS_LIST = (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = tcp)
 (host = xxxxxx.us.oracle.com) (Port = 1521)))
 (CONNECT_DATA = (SID = <sid_name> (GLOBAL_NAME = <sid_name>))))
```

```
dvols29_rms01user.world =
 (DESCRIPTION = (ADDRESS_LIST = (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = tcp)
 (host = xxxxxx.us.oracle.com) (Port = 1521)))
 (CONNECT_DATA = (SID = <sid_name> (GLOBAL_NAME = <sid_name>))))
```

Examples for a pluggable db:

```
dvols29_rms01user =
 (DESCRIPTION = (ADDRESS_LIST = (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = tcp)
 (host = xxxxxx.us.oracle.com) (Port = 1521)))
 (CONNECT_DATA = (SERVICE_NAME = <pluggable db name>)))
```

```
dvols29_rms01user.world =
 (DESCRIPTION = (ADDRESS_LIST = (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = tcp)
 (host = xxxxxx.us.oracle.com) (Port = 1521)))
 (CONNECT_DATA = (SERVICE_NAME = <pluggable db name>)))
```

---

**Note:** It is important to not just copy the tnsnames.ora file because it can quickly become out of date. The ifile clause (shown above) is key.

---

4. Create the wallet files. These are empty initially.
  - a. Ensure you are in the intended location.

```
$ pwd
/projects/rms15/dev/.wallet
```
  - b. Create the wallet files.

```
$ mkstore -wrl . -create
```
  - c. Enter the wallet password you want to use. It is recommended that you use the same password as the UNIX user you are creating the wallet on.
  - d. Enter the password again.

Two wallet files are created from the above command:

    - ewallet.p12
    - cwallet.sso
5. Create the wallet entry that associates the user name and password to the custom tns alias that was setup in the wallet's tnsnames.ora file.

```
mkstore -wrl . -createCredential <tns_alias> <username> <password>
```

---

**Example:**

```
mkstore -wrl . -createCredential dvols29_rms01user
rms01user <passwd>
```

---

6. Test the connectivity. The ORACLE\_HOME used with the wallet must be the same version or higher than what the wallet was created with.

```
$ export TNS_ADMIN=/projects/rms15/dev/.wallet /* This is very import to use
wallet to point at the alternate tnsnames.ora created in this example */

$ sqlplus /@dvols29_rms01user

SQL*Plus: Release 12

Connected to:
Oracle Database 12g

SQL> show user
USER is "rms01user"
```

Running batch programs or shell scripts would be similar:

```
Ex: dtesys /@dvols29_rms01user
script.sh /@dvols29_rms01user
```

Set the UP unix variable to help with some compiles :

```
export UP=/@dvols29_rms01user
for use in RMS batch compiles, and RMS, RWMs, and ARI forms compiles.
```

As shown in the example above, users can ensure that passwords remain invisible.

### Additional Database Wallet Commands

The following is a list of additional database wallet commands.

- Delete a credential on wallet

- ```
mkstore -wrl . -deleteCredential dvols29_rms01user
```
- Change the password for a credential on wallet


```
mkstore -wrl . -modifyCredential dvols29_rms01user rms01user passwd
```
 - List the wallet credential entries


```
mkstore -wrl . -list
```

This command returns values such as the following.

```
oracle.security.client.connect_string1
oracle.security.client.user1
oracle.security.client.password1
```
 - View the details of a wallet entry


```
mkstore -wrl . -viewEntry oracle.security.client.connect_string1
```

Returns the value of the entry:

```
dvols29_rms01user
```

```
mkstore -wrl . -viewEntry oracle.security.client.user1
```

Returns the value of the entry:

```
rms01user
```

```
mkstore -wrl . -viewEntry oracle.security.client.password1
```

Returns the value of the entry:

```
Passwd
```

Setting up RETL Wallets

RETL creates a wallet under \$RFX_HOME/etc/security, with the following files:

- cwallet.sso
- jazn-data.xml
- jps-config.xml
- README.txt

To set up RETL wallets, perform the following steps:

1. Set the following environment variables:
 - ORACLE_SID=<retaildb>
 - RFX_HOME=/u00/rfx/rfx-13
 - RFX_TMP=/u00/rfx/rfx-13/tmp
 - JAVA_HOME=/usr/jdk1.6.0_12.64bit
 - LD_LIBRARY_PATH=\$ORACLE_HOME
 - PATH=\$RFX_HOME/bin:\$JAVA_HOME/bin:\$PATH
2. Change directory to \$RFX_HOME/bin.
3. Run setup-security-credential.sh.
 - Enter 1 to add a new database credential.
 - Enter the dbuseralias. For example, ret1_java_rms01user.
 - Enter the database user name. For example, rms01user .
 - Enter the database password.
 - Re-enter the database password.
 - Enter D to exit the setup script.

4. Update your RETL environment variable script to reflect the names of both the Oracle Networking wallet and the Java wallet.
For example, to configure RETLforRPAS, modify the following entries in `$RETAIL_HOME/RETLforRPAS/rfx/etc/rmse_rpas_config.env`.
 - The RETL_WALLET_ALIAS should point to the Java wallet entry:
 - `export RETL_WALLET_ALIAS="retl_java_rms01user"`
 - The ORACLE_WALLET_ALIAS should point to the Oracle network wallet entry:
 - `export ORACLE_WALLET_ALIAS="dvo1s29_rms01user"`
 - The SQLPLUS_LOGON should use the ORACLE_WALLET_ALIAS:
 - `export SQLPLUS_LOGON="/@${ORACLE_WALLET_ALIAS}"`
5. To change a password later, run `setup-security-credential.sh`.
 - Enter 2 to update a database credential.
 - Select the credential to update.
 - Enter the database user to update or change.
 - Enter the password of the database user.
 - Re-enter the password.

For Java Applications (SIM, ReIM, RPM, RIB, AIP, Alloc, ReSA, RETL)

For Java applications, consider the following:

- For database user accounts, ensure that you set up the same alias names between the password stores (database wallet and Java wallet). You can provide the alias name during the installer process.
- Document all aliases that you have set up. During the application installation, you must enter the alias names for the application installer to connect to the database and application server.
- Passwords are not used to update entries in Java wallets. Entries in Java wallets are stored in partitions, or application-level keys. In each retail application that has been installed, the wallet is located in `<WEBLOGIC_DOMAIN_HOME>/retail/<appname>/config` Example:
`/u00/webadmin/config/domains/wls_retail/REIMDomain/retail/reim15/config`
- Application installers should create the Java wallets for you, but it is good to know how this works for future use and understanding.
- Scripts are located in `<WEBLOGIC_DOMAIN_HOME>/retail/<appname>/retail-public-security-api/bin` for administering wallet entries.
- Example:
 - `/u00/webadmin/config/domains/wls_retail/REIMDomain/retail/retail-public-security-api/bin`
- In this directory is a script to help you update each alias entry without having to remember the wallet details. For example, if you set the RPM database alias to `rms01user`, you will find a script called `update-RMS01USER.sh`.

Note: These scripts are available only with applications installed by way of an installer.

- Two main scripts are related to this script in the folder for more generic wallet operations: `dump_credentials.sh` and `save_credential.sh`.
- If you have not installed the application yet, you can unzip the application zip file and view these scripts in `<app>/application/retail-public-security-api/bin`.

- Example:
- /u00/webadmin/reim15/application/retail-public-security-api/bin

update-<ALIAS>.sh

update-<ALIAS>.sh updates the wallet entry for this alias. You can use this script to change the user name and password for this alias. Because the application refers only to the alias, no changes are needed in application properties files.

Usage:

update-<username>.sh <myuser>

Example:

```
/u00/webadmin/config/domains/wls_retail/REIMDomain/retail/reim15/retail-public-security-api/bin> ./update-RMS01USER.sh
```

```
usage: update-RMS01USER.sh <username>
```

```
<username>: the username to update into this alias.
```

```
Example: update-RMS01USER.sh myuser
```

Note: this script will ask you for the password for the username that you pass in.
/u00/webadmin/config/domains/wls_retail/REIMDomain/retail/reim15/retail-public-security-api/bin>

dump_credentials.sh

dump_credentials.sh is used to retrieve information from wallet. For each entry found in the wallet, the wallet partition, the alias, and the user name are displayed.

Note that the password is not displayed. If the value of an entry is uncertain, run save_credential.sh to resave the entry with a known password.

```
dump_credentials.sh <wallet location>
```

Example:

```
dump_credentials.sh location:
```

```
/u00/webadmin/config/domains/wls_retail/REIMDomain/retail/reim15/config
```

Retail Public Security API Utility

```
=====
```

Below are the credentials found in the wallet at the
location /u00/webadmin/config/domains/wls_retail/REIMDomain/retail/reim15/
config

```
=====
```

```
Application level key partition name:reim15
User Name Alias:WLS-ALIAS User Name:weblogic
User Name Alias:RETAIL-ALIAS User Name:retail.user
User Name Alias:LDAP-ALIAS User Name:RETAIL.USER
User Name Alias:RMS-ALIAS User Name:rms15mock
User Name Alias:REIMBAT-ALIAS User Name:reimbat
```

save_credential.sh

save_credential.sh is used to update the information in wallet. If you are unsure about the information that is currently in the wallet, use dump_credentials.sh as indicated above.

save_credential.sh -a <alias> -u <user> -p <partition name> -l <path of the wallet file location where credentials are stored>

Example:

```
/u00/webadmin/mock15_testing/reim15/application/retail-public-security-api/bin>
save_credential.sh -l wallet_test -a myalias -p mypartition -u myuser
```

```
=====
Retail Public Security API Utility
=====
```

Enter password:

Verify password:

Note: -p in the above command is for partition name. You must specify the proper partition name used in application code for each Java application.

save_credential.sh and dump_credentials.sh scripts are the same for all applications. If using save_credential.sh to add a wallet entry or to update a wallet entry, bounce the application/managed server so that your changes are visible to the application. Also, save a backup copy of your cwallet.sso file in a location outside of the deployment path, because redeployment or reinstallation of the application will wipe the wallet entries you made after installation of the application. To restore your wallet entries after a redeployment/reinstallation, copy the backed up cwallet.sso file over the cwallet.sso file. Then bounce the application/managed server.

Usage

```
=====
Retail Public Security API Utility
=====
```

usage: save_credential.sh -au[plh]

E.g. save_credential.sh -a rms-alias -u rms_user -p rib-rms -l ./

-a, --userNameAlias <arg> alias for which the credentials
needs to be stored

-h, --help usage information

-l, --locationofWalletDir <arg> location where the wallet file is
created.If not specified, it creates the wallet under secure-credential-wallet
directory which is already present under the retail-public-security-api/
directory.

-p, --appLevelKeyPartitionName <arg> application level key partition name

-u, --userName <arg> username to be stored in secure

credential wallet for specified alias*

How does the Wallet Relate to the Application?

The ORACLE Retail Java applications have the wallet alias information you create in an <app-name>.properties file. Below is the reim.properties file. Note the database information and the user are presented as well. The property called datasource.credential.alias=RMS-ALIAS uses the ORACLE wallet with the argument of RMS-ALIAS at the csm.wallet.path and csm.wallet.partition.name = reim14 to retrieve the password for application use.

Reim.properties code sample:

```
datasource.url=jdbc:oracle:thin:@xxxxxxx.us.oracle.com:1521/pkols07
datasource.schema.owner=rms15mock
datasource.credential.alias=RMS-ALIAS
# =====
# ossa related Configuration
#
# These settings are for ossa configuration to store credentials.
# =====

csm.wallet.path=/u00/webadmin/config/domains/wls_retail/REIMDomain/retail/reim15co
nfig
csm.wallet.partition.name=reim15
```

How does the Wallet Relate to Java Batch Program use?

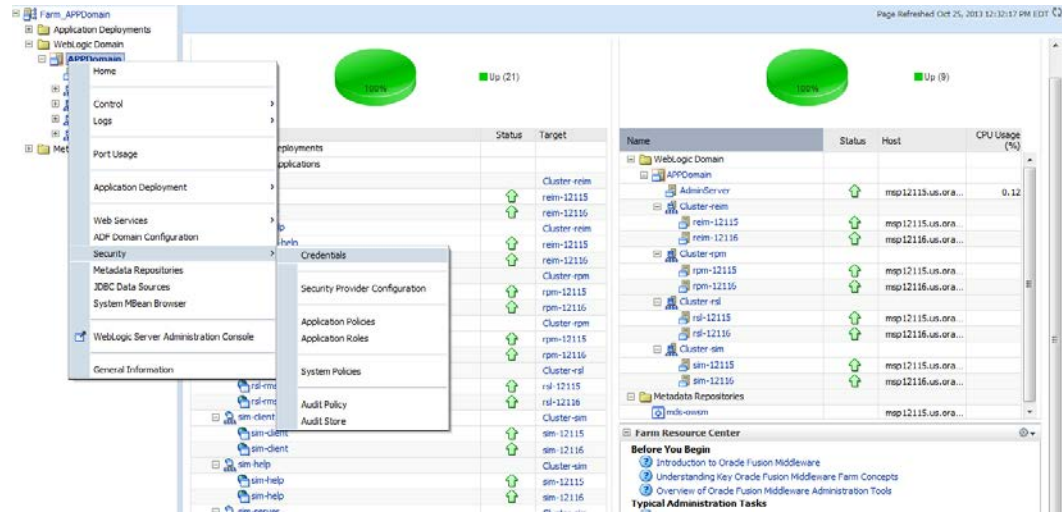
Some of the ORACLE Retail Java batch applications have an alias to use when running Java batch programs. For example, alias REIMBAT-ALIAS maps through the wallet to dbuser RMS01APP, already on the database. To run a ReIM batch program the format would be: reimbatchespgmname REIMBAT-ALIAS <other arguments as needed by the program in question>

Database Credential Store Administration

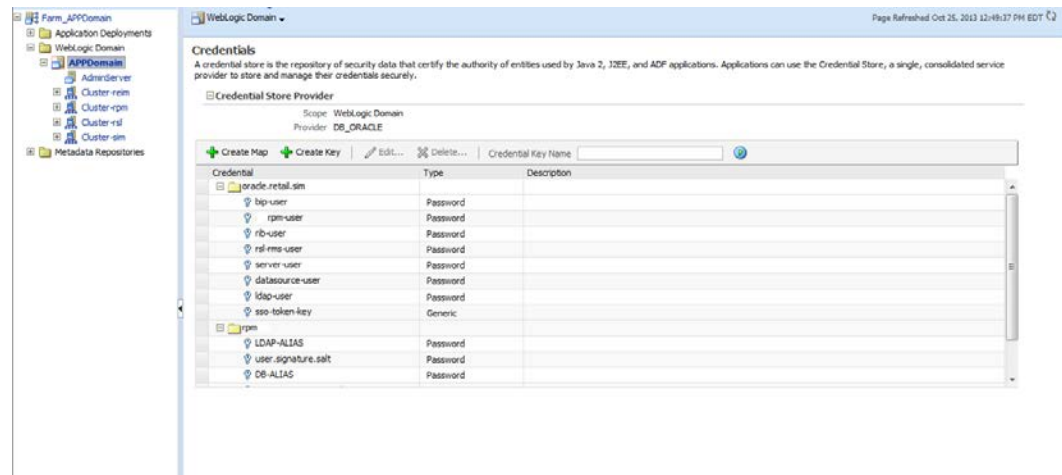
The following section describes a domain level database credential store. This is used in RPM login processing, SIM login processing, RWMS login processing, RESA login processing and Allocation login processing and policy information for application permission. Setting up the database credential store is addressed in the RPM, SIM, RESA, RWMS, and Alloc 15.0 install guides.

The following sections show an example of how to administer the password stores thru ORACLE Enterprise Manager Fusion Middleware Control, a later section will show how to do this thru WLST scripts.

1. The first step is to use your link to Oracle Enterprise Manager Fusion Middleware Control for the domain in question. Locate your domain on the left side of the screen and do a right mouse click on the domain and select **Security > Credentials**

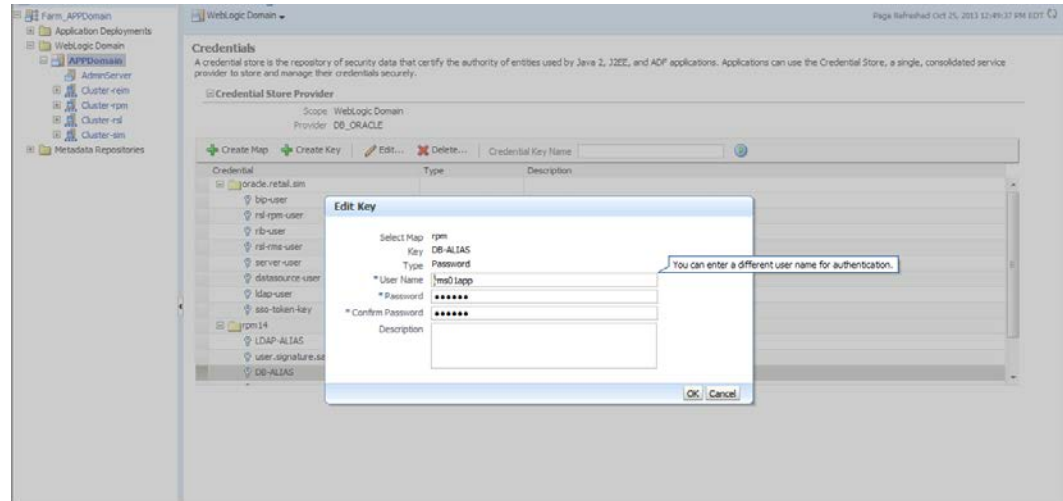


2. Click on Credentials and you will get a screen similar to the following. The following screen is expanded to make it make more sense. From here you can administer credentials.



The Create Map add above is to create a new map with keys under it. A map would usually be an application such as rpm15. The keys will usually represent alias to various users (database user, WebLogic user, LDAP user, etc). The application installer should add the maps so you should not often have to add a map.

Creation of the main keys for an application will also be built by the application installer. You will not be adding keys often as the installer puts the keys out and the keys talk to the application. You may be using EDIT on a key to see what user the key/alias points to and possibly change/reset its password. To edit a key/alias, highlight the key/alias in question and push the edit icon nearer the top of the page. You will then get a screen as follows:



The screen above shows the map (rpm) that came from the application installer, the key (DB-ALIAS) that came from the application installer (some of the keys/alias are selected by the person who did the application install, some are hard coded by the application installer in question), the type (in this case password), and the user name and password. This is where you would check to see that the user name is correct and reset the password if needed. REMEMBER, a change to an item like a database password WILL make you come into this and also change the password. Otherwise your application will NOT work correctly.

Managing Credentials with WSLT/OPSS Scripts

This procedure is optional as you can administer the credential store through the Oracle enterprise manager associated with the domain of your application install for ReIM, RPM, SIM, RESA, or Allocation.

An Oracle Platform Security Scripts (OPSS) script is a WLST script, in the context of the Oracle WebLogic Server. An online script is a script that requires a connection to a running server. Unless otherwise stated, scripts listed in this section are online scripts and operate on a database credential store. There are a few scripts that are offline, that is, they do not require a server to be running to operate.

Read-only scripts can be performed only by users in the following WebLogic groups: Monitor, Operator, Configurator, or Admin. Read-write scripts can be performed only by users in the following WebLogic groups: Admin or Configurator. All WLST scripts are available out-of-the-box with the installation of the Oracle WebLogic Server.

WLST scripts can be run in interactive mode or in script mode. In interactive mode, you enter the script at a command-line prompt and view the response immediately after. In

script mode, you write scripts in a text file (with a py file name extension) and run it without requiring input, much like the directives in a shell script.

The weakness with the WSLT/OPSS scripts is that you have to already know your map name and key name. In many cases, you do not know or remember that. The database credential store way through enterprise manager is a better way to find your map and key names easily when you do not already know them. A way in a command line mode to find the map name and alias is to run orapki. An example of orapki is as follows:

```
/u00/webadmin/product/wls_apps/oracle_common/bin> ./orapki wallet display -  
wallet  
/u00/webadmin/product/wls_apps/user_projects/domains/APPDomain/config/fmw  
config
```

(where the path above is the domain location of the wallet)

Output of orapki is below. This shows map name of rpm and each alias in the wallet:

Requested Certificates:

User Certificates:

Oracle Secret Store entries:

```
rpm@#3#@DB-ALIAS  
rpm@#3#@LDAP-ALIAS  
rpm@#3#@RETAIL.USER  
rpm@#3#@user.signature.salt  
rpm@#3#@user.signature.secretkey  
rpm@#3#@WEBLOGIC-ALIAS  
rpm@#3#@WLS-ALIAS
```

Trusted Certificates:

Subject: OU=Class 1 Public Primary Certification Authority,O=VeriSign\, Inc.,C=US

OPSS provides the following scripts on all supported platforms to administer credentials (all scripts are online, unless otherwise stated. You need the map name and the key name to run the scripts below

- listCred
- updateCred
- createCred
- deleteCred
- modifyBootstrapCredential
- addBootstrapCredential

listCred

The script listCred returns the list of attribute values of a credential in the credential store with given map name and key name. This script lists the data encapsulated in credentials of type password only.

Script Mode Syntax

```
listCred.py -map mapName -key keyName
```

Interactive Mode Syntax

```
listCred(map="mapName", key="keyName")
```

The meanings of the arguments (all required) are as follows:

- map specifies a map name (folder).
- key specifies a key name.

Examples of Use:

The following invocation returns all the information (such as user name, password, and description) in the credential with map name myMap and key name myKey:

```
listCred.py -map myMap -key myKey
```

The following example shows how to run this command and similar credential commands with WSLT:

```
/u000/webadmin/product/wls_apps/oracle_common/common/bin>
sh wlst.sh
```

```
Initializing WebLogic Scripting Tool (WLST)...
```

```
Welcome to WebLogic Server Administration Scripting Shell
```

```
wls:/offline> connect('weblogic','password123','xxxxxx.us.oracle.com:17001')
Connecting to t3://xxxxxx.us.oracle.com:17001 with userid weblogic ...
Successfully connected to Admin Server 'AdminServer' that belongs to domain
'APPDomain'.
```

```
wls:/APPDomain/serverConfig> listCred(map="rpm",key="DB-ALIAS")
Already in Domain Runtime Tree
```

```
[Name : rms01app, Description : null, expiry Date : null]
PASSWORD:retail
```

```
*The above means for map rpm15 in APPDomain, alias DB-ALIAS points to database
user rms01app with a password of retail
```

updateCred

The script updateCred modifies the type, user name, and password of a credential in the credential store with given map name and key name. This script updates the data encapsulated in credentials of type password only. Only the interactive mode is supported.

Interactive Mode Syntax

```
updateCred(map="mapName", key="keyName", user="userName", password="passw",
[desc="description"])
```

The meanings of the arguments (optional arguments are enclosed by square brackets) are as follows:

- map specifies a map name (folder) in the credential store.
- key specifies a key name.
- user specifies the credential user name.
- password specifies the credential password.
- desc specifies a string describing the credential.

Example of Use:

The following invocation updates the user name, password, and description of the password credential with map name `myMap` and key name `myKey`:

```
updateCred(map="myMap", key="myKey", user="myUsr", password="myPassw")
```

createCred

The script `createCred` creates a credential in the credential store with a given map name, key name, user name and password. This script can create a credential of type password only. Only the interactive mode is supported.

Interactive Mode Syntax

```
createCred(map="mapName", key="keyName", user="userName", password="passw",  
[desc="description"])
```

The meanings of the arguments (optional arguments are enclosed by square brackets) are as follows:

- `map` specifies the map name (folder) of the credential.
- `key` specifies the key name of the credential.
- `user` specifies the credential user name.
- `password` specifies the credential password.
- `desc` specifies a string describing the credential.

Example of Use:

The following invocation creates a password credential with the specified data:

```
createCred(map="myMap", key="myKey", user="myUsr", password="myPassw")
```

deleteCred

The script `deleteCred` removes a credential with given map name and key name from the credential store.

Script Mode Syntax

```
deleteCred.py -map mapName -key keyName
```

Interactive Mode Syntax

```
deleteCred(map="mapName", key="keyName")
```

The meanings of the arguments (all required) are as follows:

- `map` specifies a map name (folder).
- `key` specifies a key name.

Example of Use:

The following invocation removes the credential with map name `myMap` and key name `myKey`:

```
deleteCred.py -map myMap -key myKey
```

modifyBootStrapCredential

The offline script `modifyBootStrapCredential` modifies the bootstrap credentials configured in the default jps context, and it is typically used in the following scenario: suppose that the policy and credential stores are LDAP-based, and the credentials to access the LDAP store (stored in the LDAP server) are changed. Then this script can be used to seed those changes into the bootstrap credential store.

This script is available in interactive mode only.

Interactive Mode Syntax

```
modifyBootStrapCredential(jpsConfigFile="pathName", username="usrName",
password="usrPass")
```

The meanings of the arguments (all required) are as follows:

- `jpsConfigFile` specifies the location of the file `jps-config.xml` relative to the location where the script is run. Example location:
`/u00/webadmin/product/wls_apps/user_projects/domains/APPDomain/config/fmwconfig`. Example location of the bootstrap wallet is
`/u00/webadmin/product/wls_apps/user_projects/domains/APPDomain/config/fmwconfig/bootstrap`
- `username` specifies the distinguished name of the user in the LDAP store.
- `password` specifies the password of the user.

Example of Use:

Suppose that in the LDAP store, the password of the user with distinguished name `cn=orcladmin` has been changed to `<welcome1>`, and that the configuration file `jps-config.xml` is located in the current directory. Then the following invocation changes the password in the bootstrap credential store to `welcome1`:

```
modifyBootStrapCredential(jpsConfigFile='./jps-config.xml',
username='cn=orcladmin', password='<welcome1>')
```

Any output regarding the audit service can be disregarded.

addBootStrapCredential

The offline script `addBootStrapCredential` adds a password credential with given map, key, user name, and user password to the bootstrap credentials configured in the default jps context of a jps configuration file.

Classloaders contain a hierarchy with parent classloaders and child classloaders. The relationship between parent and child classloaders is analogous to the object relationship of super classes and subclasses. The bootstrap classloader is the root of the Java classloader hierarchy. The Java virtual machine (JVM) creates the bootstrap classloader, which loads the Java development kit (JDK) internal classes and `java.*` packages included in the JVM. (For example, the bootstrap classloader loads `java.lang.String`.)

This script is available in interactive mode only.

Interactive Mode Syntax

```
addBootStrapCredential(jpsConfigFile="pathName", map="mapName", key="keyName",  
username="usrName", password="usrPass")
```

The meanings of the arguments (all required) are as follows:

- `jpsConfigFile` specifies the location of the file `jps-config.xml` relative to the location where the script is run. Example location:
`/u00/webadmin/product/wls_apps/user_projects/domains/APPDomain/config/fmwconfig`
- `map` specifies the map of the credential to add.
- `key` specifies the key of the credential to add.
- `username` specifies the name of the user in the credential to add.
- `password` specifies the password of the user in the credential to add.

Example of Use:

The following invocation adds a credential to the bootstrap credential store:

```
addBootStrapCredential(jpsConfigFile='./jps-config.xml', map='myMapName',  
key='myKeyName', username='myUser', password='myPass')
```

Quick Guide for Retail Password Stores (db wallet, java wallet, DB credential stores)

Retail app	Wallet type	Wallet loc	Wallet partition	Alias name	User name	Use	Create by	Alias Example	Notes
RMS batch	DB	<RMS batch install dir (RETAIL_HOME)>/.wallet	n/a	<Database SID>_<Database schema owner>	<rms schema owner>	Compile, execution	Installer	n/a	Alias hard-coded by installer
RMS forms	DB	<forms install dir>/base/.wallet	n/a	<Database SID>_<Database schema owner>	<rms schema owner>	Compile	Installer	n/a	Alias hard-coded by installer
ARI forms	DB	<forms install dir>/base/.wallet	n/a	<Db_Ari01>	<ari schema owner>	Compile	Manual	ari-alias	
RMWS forms	DB	<forms install dir>/base/.wallet	n/a	<Database SID>_<Database schema owner>	<rwms schema owner>	Compile forms, execute batch	Installer	n/a	Alias hard-coded by installer
RPM batch plsql and sqlldr	DB	<RPM batch install dir>/.wallet	n/a	<rms schema owner alias>	<rms schema owner>	Execute batch	Manual	rms-alias	RPM plsql and sqlldr batches
RWMS auto-login	JAVA	<forms install dir>/base/.javawallet							
			<RWMS Installation name>	<RWMS database user alias>	<RWMS schema owner>	RWMS forms app to avoid dblogin screen	Installer	rwms15inst	
			<RWMS Installation name>	BI_ALIAS	<BI Publisher administrative user>	RWMS forms app to connect to BI Publisher	Installer	n/a	Alias hard-coded by installer

Retail app	Wallet type	Wallet loc	Wallet partition	Alias name	User name	Use	Create by	Alias Example	Notes
AIP app	JAVA	<weblogic domain home>/retail/<deployed aip app name>/config							Each alias must be unique
			aip	<AIP weblogic user alias>	<AIP weblogic user name>	App use	Installer	aip-weblogic-alias	
			aip	<AIP database schema user alias>	<AIP database schema user name>	App use	Installer	aip01user-alias	
			aip	<rib-aip weblogic user alias>	<rib-aip weblogic user name>	App use	Installer	rib-aip-weblogic-alias	
RPM app	DB credential store		Map=rpm or what you called the app at install time.	Many for app use					<weblogic domain home>/config/fmwc onfig/jps-config.xml has info on the credential store. This directory also has the domain cwallet.sso file.
RPM app	JAVA	<weblogic domain home>/retail/<deployed rpm app name>/config							Each alias must be unique
			rpm	<rpm weblogic user alias>	<rpm weblogic user name>	App use	Installer	rpm-weblogic-alias	

Retail app	Wallet type	Wallet loc	Wallet partition	Alias name	User name	Use	Create by	Alias Example	Notes
			rpm	<rpm batch user name> is the alias. Yes, here alias name = user name	<rpm batch user name>	App, batch use	Installer	RETAIL.USER	
	JAVA	<retail_home>/orpatch/config/javaapp_rpm							Each alias must be unique
			retail_installer	<rpm weblogic user alias>	<rpm weblogic user name>	App use	Installer	weblogic-alias	
			retail_installer	<rms shema user alias>	<rms shema user name>	App, batch use	Installer	rms01user-alias	
			retail_installer	<reim batch user alias>	<reim batch user name>	App, batch use	Installer	reimbat-alias	
			retail_installer	<LDAP-ALIAS>	cn=rpm.admin,cn=Users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com	LDAP user use	Installer	LDAP_ALIAS	
ReIM app	JAVA	<weblogic domain home>/retail/<deployed reim app name>/config							Each alias must be unique
			<installed app name, ex: reim>	<reim weblogic user alias>	<reim weblogic user name>	App use	Installer	weblogic-alias	
			<installed app name, ex: reim>	<rms shema user alias>	<rms shema user name>	App, batch use	Installer	rms01user-alias	

Retail app	Wallet type	Wallet loc	Wallet partition	Alias name	User name	Use	Create by	Alias Example	Notes
			<installed app name, ex: reim>	<reim webservice validation user alias>	<reim webservice validation user name>	App use	Installer	reimwebser vice-alias	
			<installed app name, ex: reim>	<reim batch user alias>	<reim batch user name>	App, batch use	Installer	reimbat-alias	
			<installed app name, ex: reim>	<LDAP-ALIAS>	cn=REIM.ADMIN,cn=Users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com	LDAP user use	Installer	LDAP_ALIAS	
	JAVA	<retail_home>/orpatch/conf/javaapp_reim							Each alias must be unique
			retail_installer	<reim weblogic user alias>	<reim weblogic user name>	App use	Installer	weblogic-alias	
			retail_installer	<rms shema user alias>	<rms shema user name>	App, batch use	Installer	rms01user-alias	
			retail_installer	<reim webservice validation user alias>	<reim webservice validation user name>	App use	Installer	reimwebser vice-alias	
			retail_installer	<reim batch user alias>	<reim batch user name>	App, batch use	Installer	reimbat-alias	
			retail_installer	<LDAP-ALIAS>	cn=REIM.ADMIN,cn=Users,dc=us,dc=oracle,dc=com	LDAP user use	Installer	LDAP_ALIAS	

Retail app	Wallet type	Wallet loc	Wallet partition	Alias name	User name	Use	Create by	Alias Example	Notes
RESA app	DB credential store		Map=resaor what you called the app at install time	Many for login and policies					<weblogic domain home>/config/fmwc onfig/jps-config.xml has info on the credential store. This directory also has the domain cwallet.sso file. The bootstrap directory under this directory has bootstrap cwallet.sso file.
RESA app	JAVA	<weblogic domain home>/retail/<deployed resa app name>/config							Each alias must be unique
			<installed app name>	<resa weblogic user alias>	<resa weblogic user name>	App use	Installer	wlsalias	
			<installed app name>	<resa schema db user alias>	<rmsdb shema user name>	App use	Installer	Resadb-alias	
			<installed app name>	<resa schema user alias>	<rmsdb shema user name>>	App use	Installer	resa-alias	
	JAVA	<retail_home>/orpatch/conf/javaapp_resa							Each alias must be unique

Retail app	Wallet type	Wallet loc	Wallet partition	Alias name	User name	Use	Create by	Alias Example	Notes
			retail_installer	<resa weblogic user alias>	<resa weblogic user name>	App use	Installer	wlsalias	
			retail_installer	<resa schema db user alias>	<rmsdb shema user name>	App use	Installer	Resadb-alias	
	JAVA	<retail_ home>/orpatch/config/javaapp_rasrm							Each alias must be unique
			retail_installer	<alloc weblogic user alias>	<alloc weblogic user name>	App use	Installer	weblogic-alias	
Alloc app	DB credential store		Map=alloc or what you called the app at install time	Many for login and policies					<weblogic domain home>/config/fmwc onfig/jps-config.xml has info on the credential store. This directory also has the domain cwallet.sso file. The bootstrap directory under this directory has bootstrap cwallet.sso file.
Alloc app	JAVA	<weblogic domain home>/retail/config							Each alias must be unique

Retail app	Wallet type	Wallet loc	Wallet partition	Alias name	User name	Use	Create by	Alias Example	Notes
			<installed app name>	<alloc weblogic user alias>	<alloc weblogic user name>	App use	Installer	weblogic-alias	
			<installed app name>	<rms schema user alias>	<rms schema user name>	App use	Installer	dsallocAlias	
			<installed app name>	<alloc batch user alias>	<SYSTEM_ADMINISTRATOR>	Batch use	Installer	alloc14	
	JAVA	<retail_home>/orpatch/config/javaapp_alloc							Each alias must be unique
			retail_installer	<alloc weblogic user alias>	<alloc weblogic user name>	App use	Installer	weblogic-alias	
			retail_installer	<rms schema user alias>	<rms schema user name>	App use	Installer	dsallocAlias	
			retail_installer	<alloc batch user alias>	<SYSTEM_ADMINISTRATOR>	Batch use	Installer	alloc14	
	JAVA	<retail_home>/orpatch/config/javaapp_rasm							Each alias must be unique
			retail_installer	<alloc weblogic user alias>	<alloc weblogic user name>	App use	Installer	weblogic-alias	

Retail app	Wallet type	Wallet loc	Wallet partition	Alias name	User name	Use	Create by	Alias Example	Notes
SIM app	DB credential store		Map=oracle.retail.sim	Aliases required for SIM app use					<weblogic domain home>/config/fmwc onfig/jps-config.xml has info on the credential store. This directory also has the domain cwallet.sso file.
	JAVA	<weblogic domain home>/retail/<deployed sim app name>/batch/resources/conf	oracle.retail.sim	<sim batch user alias>	<sim batch user name>	App use	Installer	BATCH-ALIAS	
	JAVA	<weblogic domain home>/retail/<deployed sim app name>/wireless/resources/conf	oracle.retail.sim	<sim wireless user alias>	<sim wireless user name>	App use	Installer	WIRELESS-ALIAS	
RETL	JAVA	<RETL home>/etc/security	n/a	<target application user alias>	<target application db userid>	App use	Manual	retl_java_rms01user	User may vary depending on RETL flow's target application
RETL	DB	<RETL home>/wallet	n/a	<target application user alias>	<target application db userid>	App use	Manual	<db>_<user>	User may vary depending on RETL flow's target application
RIB	JAVA	<RIBHOME DIR>/deployment-home/conf/security							<app> is one of aip, rfm, rms, rpm, sim, rwms, tafr
JMS			jms<1-5>	<jms user alias> for jms<1-5>	<jms user name> for jms<1-5>	Integration use	Installer	jms-alias	

Retail app	Wallet type	Wallet loc	Wallet partition	Alias name	User name	Use	Create by	Alias Example	Notes
WebLogic			rib-<app>-app-server-instance	<rib-app weblogic user alias>	<rib-app weblogic user name>	Integration use	Installer	weblogic-alias	
Admin GUI			rib-<app>#web-app-user-alias	<rib-app admin gui user alias>	<rib-app admin gui user name>	Integration use	Installer	admin-gui-alias	
Application			rib-<app>#user-alias	<app weblogic user alias>	<app weblogic user name>	Integration use	Installer	app-user-alias	Valid only for aip, rpm, sim
DB			rib-<app>#app-db-user-alias	<rib-app database schema user alias>	<rib-app database schema user name>	Integration use	Installer	db-user-alias	Valid only for rfm, rms, rwms, tafr
Error Hospital			rib-<app>#hosp-user-alias	<rib-app error hospital database schema user alias>	<rib-app error hospital database schema user name>	Integration use	Installer	hosp-user-alias	
RFI	Java	<RFI-HOME>/retail-financial-integration-solution/service-based-integration/conf/security							
			<installed app name>	rfiAppServerAdminServerUserAlias	<rfi weblogic user name>	App use	Installer	rfiAppServerAdminServerUserAlias	
			<installed app name>	rfiAdminUiUserAlias	<ORFI admin user>	App use	Installer	rfiAdminUiUserAlias	
			<installed app name>	rfiDataSourceUserAlias	<ORFI schema user name>	App use	Installer	rfiDataSourceUserAlias	

Retail app	Wallet type	Wallet loc	Wallet partition	Alias name	User name	Use	Create by	Alias Example	Notes
			<installed app name>	ebsDataSourceUserAlias	<EBS schema user name>	App use	Installer	ebsDataSourceUserAlias	
			<installed app name>	smtpMailFromAddressAlias	<From email address>	App use	Installer	smtpMailFromAddressAlias	

Appendix: Installation Order

This section provides a guideline as to the order in which the Oracle Retail applications should be installed. If a retailer has chosen to use some, but not all, of the applications the order is still valid less the applications not being installed.

Note: The installation order is not meant to imply integration between products.

Enterprise Installation Order

1. Oracle Retail Merchandising System (RMS), Oracle Retail Trade Management (RTM)
2. Oracle Retail Sales Audit (ReSA)
3. Oracle Retail Extract, Transform, Load (RETL)
4. Oracle Retail Active Retail Intelligence (ARI)
5. Oracle Retail Warehouse Management System (RWMS)
6. Oracle Retail Invoice Matching (ReIM)
7. Oracle Retail Price Management (RPM)
8. Oracle Retail Allocation
9. Oracle Retail Mobile Merchandising (ORMM)
10. Oracle Retail Xstore Office
11. Oracle Retail Xstore Point-of-Service, including Xstore Point-of-Service for Grocery, and including Xstore Mobile
12. Oracle Retail Xstore Environment
13. Oracle Retail EFTLink
14. Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management (SIM), including Mobile SIM
15. Oracle Retail Predictive Application Server (RPAS)
16. Oracle Retail Batch Script Architecture (BSA)
17. Oracle Retail Demand Forecasting (RDF)
18. Oracle Retail Category Management Planning and Optimization/Macro Space Optimization (CMPO/MSO)
19. Oracle Retail Replenishment Optimization (RO)
20. Oracle Retail Analytic Parameter Calculator Replenishment Optimization (APC RO)
21. Oracle Retail Regular Price Optimization (RPO)
22. Oracle Retail Merchandise Financial Planning (MFP)
23. Oracle Retail Size Profile Optimization (SPO)
24. Oracle Retail Assortment Planning (AP)
25. Oracle Retail Item Planning (IP)
26. Oracle Retail Item Planning Configured for COE (IP COE)
27. Oracle Retail Advanced Inventory Planning (AIP)
28. Oracle Retail Integration Bus (RIB)
29. Oracle Retail Services Backbone (RSB)

-
- 30.** Oracle Retail Financial Integration (ORFI)
 - 31.** Oracle Retail Data Extractor for Merchandising
 - 32.** Oracle Retail Clearance Optimization Engine (COE)
 - 33.** Oracle Retail Analytic Parameter Calculator for Regular Price Optimization (APC-RPO)
 - 34.** Oracle Retail Insights, including Retail Merchandising Insights (previously Retail Merchandising Analytics) and Retail Customer Insights (previously Retail Customer Analytics)